

# **STANDARD CHINESE**

## **A MODULAR APPROACH**

### **STUDENT TEXT**

**MODULE 3: MONEY**  
**MODULE 4: DIRECTIONS**

**AUGUST 1979**

Copyright © 1980 by John H. T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale,  
Roberta S. Barry, and Thomas E. Madden



## PREFACE

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach originated in an interagency conference held at the Foreign Service Institute in August 1973 to address the need generally felt in the U.S. Government language training community for improving and updating Chinese materials to reflect current usage in Beijing and Taipei.

The conference resolved to develop materials which were flexible enough in form and content to meet the requirements of a wide range of government agencies and academic institutions.

A Project Board was established consisting of representatives of the Central Intelligence Agency Language Learning Center, the Defense Language Institute, the State Department's Foreign Service Institute, the Cryptologic School of the National Security Agency, and the U.S. Office of Education, later joined by the Canadian Forces Foreign Language School. The representatives have included Arthur T. McNeill, John Hopkins, and John Boag (CIA); Colonel John F. Elder III, Joseph C. Hutchinson, Ivy Gibian, and Major Bernard Muller-Thym (DLI); James R. Frith and John B. Ratliff III (FSI); Kazuo Shitama (NSA); Richard T. Thompson and Julia Petrov (OE); and Lieutenant Colonel George Kozoriz (CFFLS).

The Project Board set up the Chinese Core Curriculum Project in 1974 in space provided at the Foreign Service Institute. Each of the six U.S. and Canadian government agencies provided funds and other assistance.

Gerard P. Kok was appointed project coordinator, and a planning council was formed consisting of Mr. Kok, Frances Li of the Defense Language Institute, Patricia O'Connor of the University of Texas, Earl M. Rickerson of the Language Learning Center, and James Wrenn of Brown University. In the fall of 1977, Lucille A. Barale was appointed deputy project coordinator. David W. Dellinger of the Language Learning Center and Charles R. Sheehan of the Foreign Service Institute also served on the planning council and contributed material to the project. The planning council drew up the original overall design for the materials and met regularly to review their development.

Writers for the first half of the materials were John H. T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale, and Roberta S. Barry, who worked in close cooperation with the planning council and with the Chinese staff of the Foreign Service Institute. Mr. Harvey developed the instructional formats of the comprehension and production self-study materials, and also designed the communication-based classroom activities and wrote the teacher's guides. Lucille A. Barale and Roberta S. Barry wrote the tape scripts and the student text. By 1978 Thomas E. Madden and Susan C. Pola had joined the staff. Led by Ms. Barale, they have worked as a team to produce the materials subsequent to Module 6.

All Chinese language material was prepared or selected by Chuan O. Chao, Ying-chih Chen, Hsiao-jung Chi, Eva Diao, Jan Hu, Tsung-mi Li, and Yunhui C. Yang, assisted for part of the time by Chieh-fang Ou Lee, Ying-ming Chen, and Joseph Yu Hsu Wang. Anna Affholder, Mei-li Chen, and Henry Khuo helped in the preparation of a preliminary corpus of dialogues.


Administrative assistance was provided at various times by Vincent Basciano, Lisa A. Bowden, Jill W. Ellis, Donna Fong, Renee T. C. Liang, Thomas E. Madden, Susan C. Pola, and Kathleen Strype.

The production of tape recordings was directed by Jose M. Ramirez of the Foreign Service Institute Recording Studio. The Chinese script was voiced by Ms. Chao, Ms. Chen, Mr. Chen, Ms. Diao, Ms. Hu, Mr. Khuo, Mr. Li, and Ms. Yang. The English script was read by Ms. Barale, Ms. Barry, Mr. Basciano, Ms. Ellis, Ms. Pola, and Ms. Strype.

The graphics were produced by John McClelland of the Foreign Service Institute Audio-Visual staff, under the general supervision of Joseph A. Sadote, Chief of Audio-Visual.

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach was field-tested with the cooperation of Brown University; the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center; the Foreign Service Institute; the Language Learning Center; the United States Air Force Academy; the University of Illinois; and the University of Virginia.

Colonel Samuel L. Stapleton and Colonel Thomas G. Foster, Commandants of the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, authorized the DLIFLC support necessary for preparation of this edition of the course materials. This support included coordination, graphic arts, editing, typing, proofreading, printing, and materials necessary to carry out these tasks.

  
James R. Frith, Chairman  
Chinese Core Curriculum Project Board

## CONTENTS

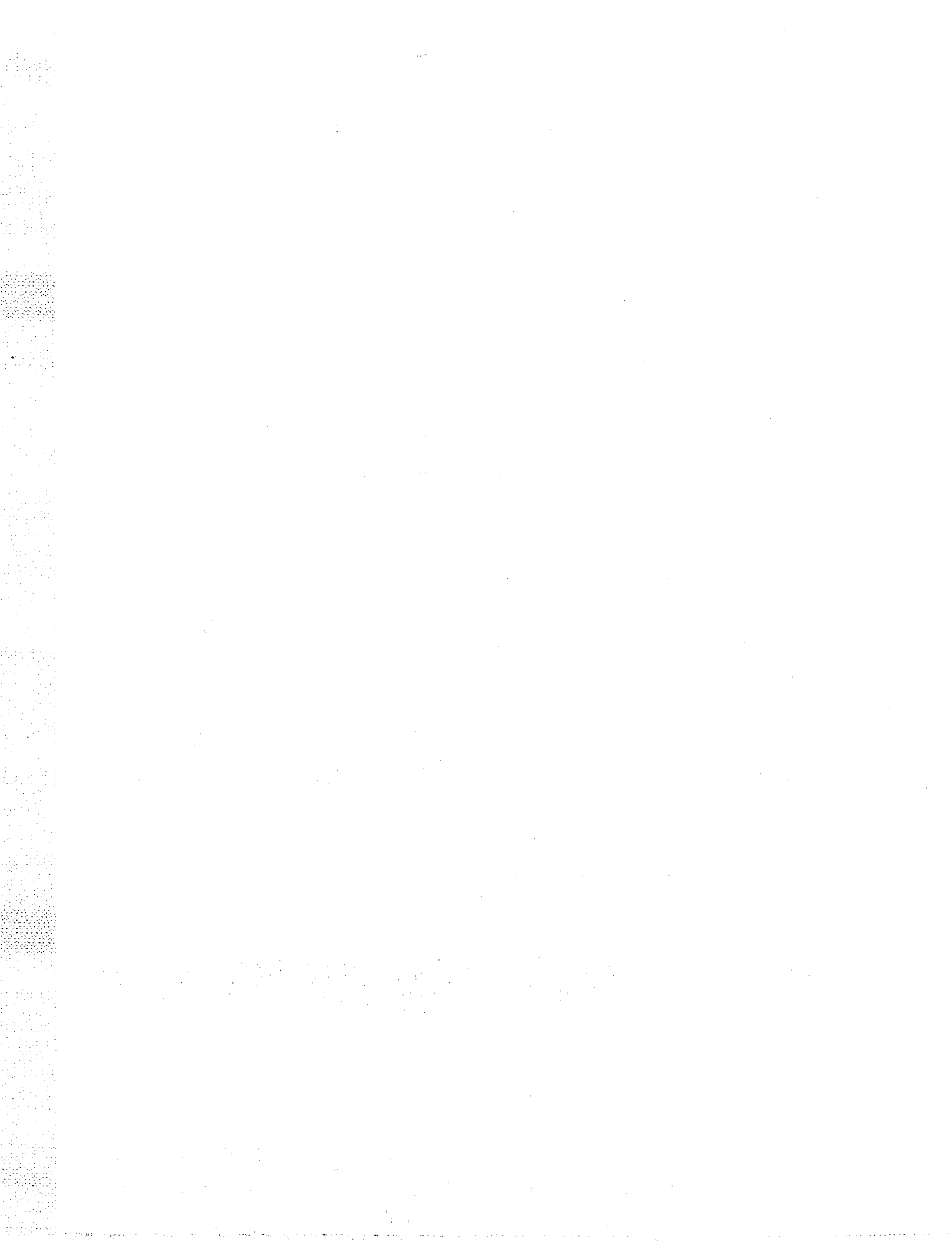
Preface . . . . .	iii
MODULE 3: MONEY	
Objectives . . . . .	1
Target Lists . . . . .	2
UNIT 1	
Reference List . . . . .	8
Vocabulary . . . . .	10
Reference Notes . . . . .	11
Topic and comment	
Yes/no-choice questions	
Asking and giving prices	
The counters "volume," "copy," "sheet," "piece," "stick"	
Prices	
Drills . . . . .	19
UNIT 2	
Reference List . . . . .	26
Vocabulary . . . . .	28
Reference Notes . . . . .	29
"Some," <u>diǎn(r)</u>	
Imperatives and polite imperatives	
Nominalized adjectival verbs ( <u>dàde</u> , <u>xiǎode</u> )	
More on counters	
More on prices	
Drills . . . . .	35
UNIT 3	
Reference List . . . . .	40
Vocabulary . . . . .	42
Reference Notes . . . . .	43
Reduplicated verbs ( <u>kānkan</u> )	
"Or" questions with <u>hǎishi</u>	
Sentences with objects and <u>dōu</u>	
Adjectival verbs and comparison	
The marker <u>ba</u> for tentative statements and requests	
Colors	
Vocabulary Booster (Colors) . . . . .	50
Drills . . . . .	51
UNIT 4	
Reference List . . . . .	57
Vocabulary . . . . .	59
Reference Notes . . . . .	60
The plural counter <u>-xie</u> *	
Time words in topic position	
Completion <u>le</u> in sentences with counted objects	
Modifying phrases with <u>de</u>	

Vocabulary Booster (Things in a Classroom) . . . . .	66
Drills . . . . .	67
UNIT 5	
Reference List . . . . .	75
Vocabulary . . . . .	76
Reference Notes . . . . .	77
Money denominations	
The prepositional verb <u>gěi</u>	
More on the marker <u>ne</u>	
Focusing the question with <u>shì bu shi</u>	
Drills . . . . .	82
UNIT 6	
Reference List . . . . .	87
Vocabulary . . . . .	89
Reference Notes . . . . .	90
Clock time	
<u>Ba</u> in questions	
Time-of-day words	
Drills . . . . .	96

MODULE 4: DIRECTIONS

Objectives . . . . .	104
Map of Běijīng . . . . .	105
Map of Taipei . . . . .	106
Target Lists . . . . .	107
UNIT 1	
Reference List . . . . .	113
Maps for C-1 Tape . . . . .	115
Vocabulary . . . . .	116
Reference Notes . . . . .	117
The prepositional verbs <u>dào</u> , "to"; <u>cóng</u> , "from";	
<u>wàng</u> , "towards"; and <u>xiàng</u> , "towards"	
Directions for "ahead," "left," and "right"	
Completion <u>le</u> in future contexts	
<u>Zài</u> meaning "then"	
Drills . . . . .	124
UNIT 2	
Reference List . . . . .	131
Maps for C-1 Tape . . . . .	133
Vocabulary . . . . .	134
Reference Notes . . . . .	136
The four directions	
Place words with <u>-biānr</u>	
Location words and the verbs <u>shì</u> , <u>yǒu</u> , and <u>zài</u>	
"Before" and "after"	

Vocabulary Booster (Things in Nature) . . . . .	146
Drills . . . . .	148
UNIT 3	
Reference List . . . . .	156
Maps for C-1 Tape . . . . .	158
Vocabulary . . . . .	159
Reference Notes . . . . .	161
The prepositional verbs <u>lí</u> , "apart from," and	
<u>cháo</u> , "towards"	
Compound verbs of direction with <u>lái</u> and <u>qù</u>	
The marker <u>-zhe</u>	
Drills . . . . .	168
UNIT 4	
Reference List . . . . .	175
Vocabulary . . . . .	177
Reference Notes . . . . .	178
The prepositional verb <u>zuò</u> , "by"	
Compound verbs of result	
Directions inside a building	
Vocabulary Booster (Buildings and Institutions) . . . . .	184
Drills . . . . .	186
UNIT 5	
Reference List . . . . .	193
Maps for C-1 Tape . . . . .	195
Vocabulary . . . . .	196
Reference Notes . . . . .	197
Addresses	
<u>Zài</u> meaning "more," "again"	
Drills . . . . .	205





## MODULE 3: MONEY

The Money Module (MON) will provide you with the skills needed to exchange money, make simple purchases, and discuss your purchases in Chinese.

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the BIO Criterion Test. Prerequisites to units 4 and 5 of this module are tapes 5 and 6, Numbers resource module and tapes 3 and 4, Time and Dates resource module.

The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, and associated resource modules may also be included.

### OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Comprehend the numbers 1 through 99,999, including those numbers used in money expressions, and say them in Chinese when given English equivalents.
2. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the MON Target Lists.
3. Say any Chinese sentence in the MON Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
4. Give the Chinese names, when given the English, for fifteen items to be bought.
5. Say that he wants to make a purchase, find out if the item is sold, ask to see it, find out the price, ask to see other similar items, and either make the purchase or say he does not want to buy the item.
6. Talk in Chinese about the items he bought, the quantity he bought, the size and color of the items, and the price (cost) (including a comparison of his purchases with other items).
7. Ask for change (specific denominations).
8. Say he wants to change money into local currency, find out where to change it, ask what the current exchange rate is, and complete the exchange using cash or traveler's checks.

## UNIT 1 TARGET LIST

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.<br>Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèli.                        | I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.<br>Fine. They're right here.              |
| 2. Zhège bào duōshao qián?<br>Zhège bào wǔkuài qián yí fèn.                | How much is this newspaper?<br>This newspaper is five dollars a copy.                        |
| 3. Zhèli yǒu Měiguó zázhi meiyǒu?<br>Zhèli méiyǒu Měiguó zázhi.            | Are there any American magazines here?<br>There aren't any American magazines here.          |
| 4. Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguó shū bu mai?<br>Duìbuqǐ, Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mài. | Do you sell American books here?<br>I'm sorry, we don't sell American books.                 |
| 5. Bào, zázhi, yí gòng duōshao qián?<br>Yí gòng sānshíwǔkuài qián.         | How much are the newspaper and magazine altogether?<br>Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars. |
| 6. Zhè liǎngzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?<br>Sānshíèrkuài qián.                 | How much are these two maps?<br>Thirty-two dollars.  |
| 7. Zhège duōshao qián?<br>Sānshíkuài qián yí běn.<br>Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yí běn.   | How much is this one?<br>Thirty dollars a copy.<br>Fine, I'll buy one.                       |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 8. yí fèn(r) bàozhǐ  | one newspaper              |
| 9. yì zhī bǐ         | one pen                    |
| 10. yì zhāng zhǐ     | one piece of paper         |
| 11. yí běn zì diǎn   | one dictionary             |
| 12. Hàn-Yīng zì diǎn | Chinese-English dictionary |
| 13. Yīng-Hàn zì diǎn | English-Chinese dictionary |
| 14. huà xué          | chemistry                  |
| 15. shù xué          | mathematics                |

## UNIT 2 TARGET LIST

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Zhèige diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn?<br>Bāmáo qián yìjīn.<br>Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn.   | How much is this kind of pastry per catty?<br>Eighty cents a catty.<br>Please give me two catties.  |
| 2. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?<br>Wǒ bú yào shenme le.   | What else do you want?<br>I don't want anything else.   |
| 3. Qìshuǐ duōshao qián yìpíng?<br>Liǎngmáo wǔ.   | How much per bottle is the soda?<br>Twenty-five cents.  |
| 4. Zhèi shì sānkuài qián.<br>Zhǎo ni liùmáo wǔfēn qián.<br>Xièxie. Zàijiàn.  | Here's three dollars.<br>Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.<br>Thank you. Good-bye.   |
| 5. Nèige dà píngguǒ duōshao qián?<br>Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.<br><br>Qǐng gěi wo sānjīn nèige xiǎode.<br><br>Hǎo. Sānjīn yíkuài líng wǔ. | How much are those large apples?<br>The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.<br><br>Please give me three catties of those small ones.<br><br>Certainly. Three catties are \$1.05. |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 6. júzi          | oranges, tangerines |
| 7. píjiǔ         | beer                |
| 8. yíkuài féizào | one bar of soap     |
| 9. zuò mǎimai    | to do business      |
| 10. dàren        | adult               |
| 11. xiǎoháizi    | child               |

## UNIT 3 TARGET LIST

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèige huāpíng.<br>Nèige? Zhèige lán de háishi zhèige hóng de?<br>Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?       | Please give me that vase to look at.<br>Which one? This blue one or this red one?<br>Give me both of them to look at. All right?                                       |
| 2. Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nèige hǎo?<br>Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo.  | Which of these two students is better?<br>Sīmǎ Xìn is better.  |
| 3. Nèige hóng huāpíng zhēn hǎokàn. Nǐn yǒu dà yìdiǎnr de ma?<br>Yǒu. Nǐ kàn zhèige zěnmeyàng?<br>Hěn hǎo. Hǎo, qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba. | That red vase is really beautiful. Do you have one a little larger?<br>We do. What do you think of this one?<br>It's very nice. Okay, how about giving me two, please. |
| 4. Nèige lán de tài guì le. Wǒ yào hóng de. Hóng de piányi.  | That blue one is too expensive. I want the red one. The red one is cheaper.  |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                |                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5. bái         | to be white                       |
| 6. hēi         | to be black                       |
| 7. huáng       | to be yellow, to be brown         |
| 8. lǜ          | to be green                       |
| 9. jiù         | to be old, to be used, to be worn |
| 10. xīn        | to be new                         |
| 11. gāo        | to be tall                        |
| 12. ǎi         | to be short (of stature)          |
| 13. gāoxìng    | to be happy                       |
| 14. nánkàn     | to be ugly                        |
| 15. yìbǎ yǔsǎn | one umbrella                      |
| 16. kàn        | to read, to look at, to visit     |

## UNIT 4 TARGET LIST

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Wǒmen jiālide dōngxi, yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.                                  | Some of our household things have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.                          |
| 2. Tāmen mài de pánziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn. Kěshi guì yìdiǎn.                             | Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive.               |
| 3. Wǒ mǎi de nàxiē pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì. Guì de wǒ méi mǎi.                             | All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.                |
| 4. Nín mǎi shénme le?<br>Wǒ mǎi pánziwǎn le.   | What did you buy?<br>I bought dishes.   |
| 5. Nín mǎi le duōshao pánziwǎn?<br>Wǒ mǎi le shíge dà pánzi.                               | How many dishes did you buy?<br>I bought ten large plates.  |
| 6. Nǐde fànwǎn shì shénme yánsède?<br>Shì lán de.<br>Wǒ yě xǐhuan lán de.                  | What color are your rice bowls?<br>They're blue ones.<br>I like blue ones too.                    |
| 7. Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎi de?<br>Shì zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎi de. | This teacup of yours is very nice.<br>Where was it bought?<br>It was bought at the First Company. |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 8. yíge bīngxiāng  | one refrigerator |
| 9. yízhāng dītǎn   | one rug          |
| 10. yíge shūjiàzi  | one bookcase     |
| 11. yìbǎ yǐzi      | one chair        |
| 12. yízhāng zhuōzi | one table        |

## UNIT 5 TARGET LIST

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Máfán nǐ, wǒ zhèr yǒu yībǎikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng<br>nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huàn.                   | Sorry to bother you. I have one<br>hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's<br>checks here. Please change it<br>for me.                          |
| 2. Nǐ yào nǎme huàn?<br>Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔ-<br>kuàide bā.   | How do you want to change it?<br>How about giving me two fives,<br>please.   |
| 3. Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?<br>Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn.  | Do you accept U.S. currency?<br>I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S.<br>currency.   |
| 4. Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu yínháng?<br>Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nàr.  | Is there a bank here?<br>There is. The bank is right over<br>there.  |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhèr<br>huàn qián?<br>Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.                                      | May I ask, is it here that I change<br>money?<br>Yes, you change it here.  |
| 6. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?<br>Jīntiānde páijià shì yíkuài<br>Měijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù<br>Rénmínbì. | What is today's exchange rate?<br>Today's exchange rate is one U.S.<br>dollar to one dollar and ninety-<br>six cents in People's currency. |
| 7. Xièxie.<br>Bú kèqi.  | Thank you.<br>You're welcome.  |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 8. yíge diànshàn   | one electric fan |
| 9. yíge diànshì    | one television   |
| 10. yíge shōuyīnjī | one radio        |
| 11. yíge zhōng     | one clock        |
| 12. yíge shǒubiǎo  | one wristwatch   |

## UNIT 6 TARGET LIST

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Nǐmen zhèli kéyì huàn Měijīn ma?<br>Duìbuqǐ, bù kéyì. Nín děi zài<br>Táiwān Yínháng huàn.                  | Can U.S. currency be changed here?<br>I'm sorry, that's not possible. You<br>must change it at the Bank of<br>Taiwan.                |
| 2. Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén,<br>jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?<br>Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén, sāndiǎn<br>bàn guān mén. | What time does the bank open,<br>and what time does it close?<br>It opens at nine o'clock and closes<br>at three-thirty.             |
| 3. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.<br>Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshí-<br>bākuài Táibì.                              | I want to change some money into<br>Taiwan currency.<br>Certainly. One U.S. dollar is<br>thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan<br>currency. |
| 4. Qǐng ni děngyíděng. Wǒ jiù lái.  | Please wait a moment. I'll be right<br>back.   |
| 5. Qǐng gěi wǒ diǎn xiǎo piàozi,<br>xíng bù xíng?   | Please give me some small bills.<br>Would that be all right?   |
| 6. Méi shenme.  | It's nothing.  |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 7. zǎochen (zǎochén)    | early morning     |
| 8. zǎoshang (zǎoshàng)  | morning           |
| 9. shàngwǔ (shàngwu)    | forenoon, morning |
| 10. zhōngwǔ (zhōngwu)   | noon              |
| 11. xiàwǔ (xiàwu)       | afternoon         |
| 12. wǎnshang (wǎnshàng) | evening           |
| 13. yèli                | night             |
| 14. bàn yè              | midnight          |
| 15. jiàn                | to meet           |
| 16. māmahūhū            | so-so, fair       |

## UNIT 1

### REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào ma?            | Are there any English-language newspapers here?                |
| B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.                      | Yes. They're right over there.                                 |
| 2. A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào mei-you?       | Are there any English-language newspapers here?                |
| B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.                      | Yes. They're right over there.                                 |
| 3. A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.            | I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.             |
| B: Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèli.                     | Fine. They're right here.                                      |
| 4. A: Zhège duōshao qián?                  | How much is this one?  |
| B: Wǔkuài qián.                            | Five dollars.  |
| 5. A: Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?     | How much is the Chinese-language newspaper?                    |
| B: Sānkuài qián yí fèn.                    | Three dollars a copy.  |
| 6. A: Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguó zázhi bu mai? | Do you sell American magazines here?                           |
| B: Mài. Wǒmen zhèli mài.                   | Yes, we sell them here.  |
| 7. A: Zhège duōshao qián?                  | How much is this one?  |
| B: Sānshikuài qián yí běn.                 | Thirty dollars a copy.   |
| A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yí běn.                     | Fine, I'll buy one.  |
| 8. A: Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguó shū meiyou?   | Do you have any American books here?                           |
| B: Duìbuqǐ, Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mài.       | I'm sorry, we don't sell American books here.                  |
| 9. A: Bào, zázhi, yí gòng duōshao qián?    | How much are the newspaper and magazine altogether?            |
| B: Bào wǔkuài, zázhi sānshikuài.           | The newspaper is five dollars; the magazine is thirty dollars. |
| B: Yí gòng sānshiwǔkuài qián.              | Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.                          |



10. A: Nǐmen zhèli mài dìtú bu mai? Do you sell maps here?  
B: Mài. Zài nàli. We do. They're over there.
11. B: Nǐn xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú? What kind of map would you like to buy?  
A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú. I would like to buy a map of Taipei.
12. A: Zhèzhāng Táiběi dìtú duōshao qián? How much is this map of Taipei?  
B: Shíèrkuài qián. Twelve dollars.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

13. yí fèn(r) bào zhǐ one newspaper
14. yì zhī bǐ one pen
15. yì zhāng zhǐ one piece of paper
16. yì běn zì diǎn one dictionary
17. Hàn-Yīng zì diǎn Chinese-English dictionary
18. Yīng-Hàn zì diǎn English-Chinese dictionary
19. huà xué chemistry
20. shù xué mathematics

## VOCABULARY

bào (yí fèn)	newspaper
bàozhǐ (yí fèn)	newspaper
-běn	volume
bǐ (yì zhī)	pen
dì tú (yì zhāng)	map
duì bu qǐ	I'm sorry
duō shao	how much, how many
-fèn(r)	copy (counter for magazine or newspaper)
Hàn-Yīng zì diǎn	Chinese-English dictionary
huà xué	chemistry
jiù	right, exactly (with ref- erence to space)
-kuài	dollar (in context)
mǎi	to buy
mài	to sell
qián	money
shū (yì běn)	book
shù xué	mathematics
xiǎng	to want to
xiǎng yì xiǎng	to think it over
yì gòng	altogether
Yīng-Hàn zì diǎn	English-Chinese dictionary
zá zhì (yì běn)	magazine
-zhāng	(counter for flat things-- tables, paper, pictures, etc.)
zhǐ (yì zhāng)	paper
-zhī	(counter for straight, sticklike objects)
zì diǎn (yì běn)	dictionary

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào ma?      Are there any English-language newspapers here?  
 B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.                      Yes. They're right over there.

Notes on No. 1

Zhèli yǒu: The Chinese verb yǒu sometimes means "to have" and sometimes means "to be" in the sense of "to exist." In exchange 1, yǒu has the latter meaning. With this meaning, it often translates into English as "there is/are."

Topic-comment sentences: The subject of a Chinese sentence need not be the person who performs an action or experiences a state. Often, the relationship between the subject and the rest of the sentence is looser and can be analyzed as topic-comment.

A topic is a word or phrase at the beginning of a sentence which sets the scene for the rest of the sentence. The topic is a starting point for understanding a sentence, giving background information and establishing the perspective for listeners. For this reason, time and place phrases are often used as topics.

Zhèli		yǒu	Yīngwén bào.
(Here	there	are	English-language newspapers.)

A comment is the rest of the sentence which follows the topic. Here are some examples:

Bǐ, tā yǒu; zhǐ, tā méiyǒu.      He has a pen; he doesn't have paper.  
 (literally, "Pen he has; paper he doesn't.")

A: Nǐ shì nǎr?                              Where are you calling from?  
 B: Wǒ shì Táiwān Dàxué.                  Taiwan University.

Zhèzhāng dìtú mài shíkuài qián.      As for this map, they sell it for ten dollars.

Clearly, the last two examples are meaningful only when the relationship between the initial nouns/pronouns and verbs is understood to be one of topic-comment, not the usual subject-predicate relation of actor-action.

While there is no simple rule that tells you when to use topic-comment sentences in Chinese, some helpful generalizations can be made. These generalizations will be discussed as example sentences appear in the Reference Lists.

Jiù zài nàli, "They're right over there": You have learned jiù as "only," a synonym of zhǐ. In exchange 1, you see another use of jiù: "right," "exactly," "precisely." This word is often used to describe "right" where something is, and is followed by zài, "in/at/on."

2. A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou? Are there any English-language newspapers here?  
B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli. Yes. They're right over there.

Notes on No. 2

Yǒu...meiyou: The first sentence in exchange 2 is a yes/no-choice question. This type of question is formed by explicitly offering the listener a choice between an affirmative and a negative answer. The negative alternative is tacked onto the end of the sentence. Similar questions exist in English. But the English question would be an impatient one, while the Chinese question is an ordinary one:

Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou?

Are there any English-language newspapers here, or aren't there?

Neutral tones: Whether or not a syllable is pronounced in the Neutral tone often depends on the speed of speech and the mood the speaker is trying to convey. In informal conversation between native speakers, there are many more Neutral tones than in the more careful, deliberate speech of a language teacher speaking to foreign students. (Bear this point in mind when you find a discrepancy between the textbook marking of a word and the pronunciation of that word on tape.)

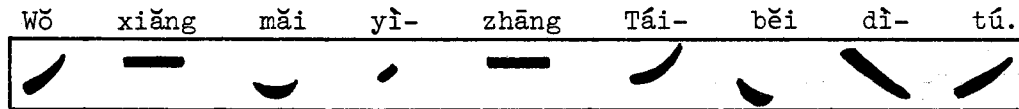
Most syllables in any stretch of spoken Chinese are neither completely "Neutral" (i.e., with no audible change in pitch for the duration of the syllable) nor completely "full" in length and amplitude. These syllables will usually be somewhere in between the two extremes.

Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou? Are there any English-language newspapers here?

Zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén bào méiyǒu?

Often a syllable will not sound like a full tone. But if you ask "Then is this syllable in the Neutral tone?" the answer will be "No, not exactly." There is no distinct dividing line between a syllable with a tone and a syllable in the Neutral tone. Very often, the most helpful answer to the

question "Should this be pronounced in the Neutral tone?" is "Pronounce it the way you hear it." The language is taught in terms of four tones, but your ears hear more.



3. A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào. I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.  
B: Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèlǐ. Fine. They're right here.

Note on No. 3

The auxiliary verb xiǎng is sometimes translated as "would like to" or "to want to." Here are some examples of translations you have learned for xiǎng:

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.       | I'm thinking of buying an English-language newspaper. OR I would like to buy an English-language newspaper. OR I want to buy an English-language newspaper. |
| Wǒ xiǎng tā xiǎng míngtiān zǒu. | I think he is planning to leave tomorrow.   |
| Wǒ hěn xiǎng niàn shū.          | I very much want to study.  |
| Wǒ bú tài xiǎng qù.             | I don't want to go very much. [ <u>Tài</u> , meaning "too," "excessively," appears in Unit 3.]  |

4. A: Zhège duōshao qián? How much is this one?  
B: Wǔkuài qián. Five dollars.

Notes on No. 4

Zhège duōshao qián? In Chinese sentences that ask for and give prices, the word shì, "to be," is usually omitted.

Zhège		duōshao qián?
(This one	is	how much money?)

Shì reappears, however, in negative and contrastive sentences: Zhège bú shì sìkuài qián, shì wǔkuài qián, "This (item) isn't four dollars; it's five dollars."

Wǔkuài qián literally means "five dollars money." The counter -kuài, "dollar," indicates the units of the general class "money" that are being counted (i.e., dollars as opposed to cents).

5. A: Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?                      How much is the Chinese-language newspaper?  
       B: Sānkuài qián yīfèn.    Three dollars a copy.

Notes on No. 5

Notice in the sentence Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián? that the general counter -ge is used rather than the specific counter -fèn, "copy." The counter -ge is often used in talking about the KIND of thing. In this case the question is about the price of a newspaper as a publication, not about the price of a copy. The specific counter would be used to talk about a particular concrete object, as in a sentence like "This copy of the China Post is torn."

Yīfèn: In Chinese, when you talk about the unit price of an item, the unit is a counter. Notice that yīfèn comes at the end of the sentence, just as "a copy" does in English.

6. A: Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguó zāzhì bu mai?                      Do you sell American magazines here?  
       B: Mài. Wǒmen zhèli mài.    Yes, we sell them here.

Notes on No. 6

Mài, "to sell," differs from the word mǎi, "to buy," only in its tone.

Nǐmen zhèli, "your place here," literally, "you here": Use nǐmen zhèli when talking to someone who represents a store, a bank, or other institutions. By putting zhèli (zhèr), "here," or nàli (nàr), "there," after a person's name or a pronoun, you make a phrase referring to a place associated with the person. For example, nǐ nàli means "over there where you are now," and wǒ zhèli means "here where I am now." Use these phrases when you want to express the idea of an item being close to a person (not necessarily ownership).

Nǐ nàli yǒu bǐ meiyǒu?

Do you have a pen over there? (i.e.,  
"Is there a pen over there where  
you are?")

This kind of phrase is also used to mean a person's home: nǐ nàli, "your place" (used when the speaker is not at "your house"); wǒ zhèli, "my place" (used when the speaker is at home)

A: Chén Xiǎojiě zài nàli?

Where is Miss Chén?

B: Tā zài Liú Tàitai nàli.

She is at Mrs. Liú's house.

Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguó zázhi bu mai? In this sentence, nǐmen zhèli is used as a topic. Literally, the sentence means "As for your place here, are American magazines sold?"

7. A: Zhège duōshao qián?

How much is this one?

B: Sānshikuài qián yībēn.

Thirty dollars a copy.

A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yībēn.

Fine, I'll buy one.

#### Note on No. 7

The counter -běn, "volume," "copy," is used for both books and magazines.

8. A: Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguó shū meiyǒu?

Do you have any American books here?

B: Duìbuqǐ, Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mǎi.

I'm sorry, we don't sell American books here.

#### Notes on No. 8

Duìbuqǐ literally means "unable to face (you)." This word is used to say "I'm sorry" when you bump into a person, arrive late, and so on. It is

not the word for "I'm sorry" when you sympathize with someone else's misfortune (e.g., when a relative dies).

Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mài: In this sentence, Měiguó shū, the object of the verb mài, occurs at the beginning, in topic position. Here the order of the sentence elements is topic, subject, verb. Some speakers of English use this same word order. Compare:

Měiguó shū	wǒmen	bú mài.
(American books	we	don't sell.)

Notice that bú mài is not the ending of a yes/no-choice question. The phrase keeps its tones in this sentence.

9. A: Bào, zázhi, yígòng duōshao qián? How much are the newspaper and magazine altogether?  
 B: Bào wǔkuài, zázhi sānshikuài. The newspaper is five dollars; the magazine is thirty dollars.  
 B: Yígòng sānshiwǔkuài qián. Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.

Notes on No. 9

Yígòng, "altogether": In totaling something up, the items being totaled begin the sentence, in topic position, and are followed by the adverb yígòng.

In many situations you will hear prices given without the word qián.

10. A: Nǐmen zhèli mài dìtú bu mai? Do you sell maps here?  
 B: Mài. Zài nàli. We do. They're over there.
11. B: Nín xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú? What kind of map would you like to buy?  
 A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú. I would like to buy a map of Taipei.



Notes on No. 11

Shénme dītú literally means "what map." In exchange 11, this phrase is used to mean "what kind of map."

Yìzhāng: The counter -zhāng is used for flat objects. Literally, yìzhāng Táiběi dītú means "one-sheet Taipei map." In exchange 11, the phrase is translated simply as "a map of Taipei."

12. A: Zhèzhāng Táiběi dītú                      How much is this map of Taipei?  
           duōshao qián?  
    B: Shíèrkuài qián.                              Twelve dollars.

Note on No. 12

Zhèzhāng dītú: Compare the two phrases which follow.

zhè		-zhāng	dītú	(this map)
zhè	liǎng	-zhāng	dītú	(these two maps)

In the first phrase, the counter -zhāng does not have a number in front of it. In effect, the number 1 was dropped after the specifier zhè. Notice that when a specifier and a number occur together in Chinese, the word order is just like English: zhè liǎngzhāng dītú, "these two maps."

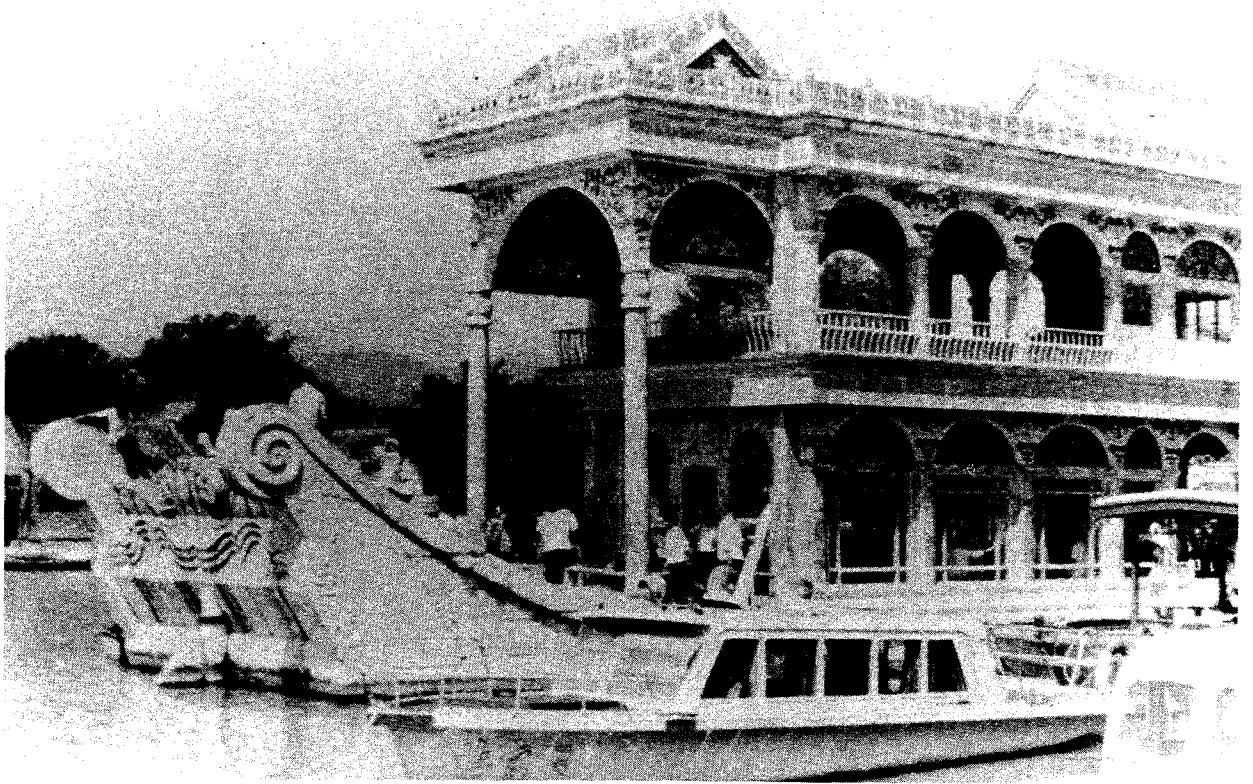
13. yí fèn(r) bàozhǐ                              one newspaper  
 14. yì zhī bǐ                                      one pen  
 15. yì zhāng zhǐ                                one piece of paper  
 16. yì běn zì diǎn                              one dictionary  
 17. Hān-Yīng zì diǎn                        Chinese-English dictionary  
 18. Yīng-Hān zì diǎn                        English-Chinese dictionary  
 19. huà xué                                      chemistry  
 20. shù xué                                      mathematics

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Bàozhǐ and bào, two words for "newspaper," are interchangeable.

Yìzhī bǐ: The counter for pens, -zhī, is the counter for straight, sticklike objects.

Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn: The word for "Chinese" in these expressions comes from Han Dynasty (206 B.C. to A.D. 219). Hàn is often used in titles to refer to the Chinese people and to their language.



A scene on the lake at the Summer Palace, Běijīng

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào ma?<br>(Do you have any English-language newspapers here?) | <u>You</u> : Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyou?<br>(Do you have any English-language newspapers here?) |
| 2. Zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén bào ma?  | Zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén bào meiyou?  |
| 3. Zhèli yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn ma?   | Zhèli yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn meiyou?   |
| 4. Zhèli yǒu Měiguó shū ma?  | Zhèli yǒu Měiguó shū meiyou?  |
| 5. Nàli yǒu Zhōngwén zázhi ma?   | Nàli yǒu Zhōngwén zázhi meiyou?   |
| 6. Nàli yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú ma?  | Nàli yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú meiyou?  |
| 7. Nàli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn ma?  | Nàli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn meiyou?  |

B. Transformation Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Yīngwén bào zài wǒ zhèli.<br>(The English-language newspaper is over here by me.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào.<br>(Over here by me is an English-language newspaper.) |
| 2. Zhōngguó dìtú zài nǐmen zhèli ma?  | Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú ma?   |
| 3. Měiguó zázhi zài zhèli.  | Zhèli yǒu Měiguó zázhi.   |
| 4. Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn zài nàli.  | Nàli yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn.   |
| 5. Zhōngwén bào zài zhèli.  | Zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén bào.   |
| 6. Zhōngwén zìdiǎn zài tā nàli.   | Tā nàli yǒu Zhōngwén zìdiǎn.  |
| 7. Zhōngguó lìshǐ shū zài wǒmen zhèli.  | Wǒmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngguó lìshǐ shū.   |

C. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèige duōshao qián?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) \$5<br>(How much is this?) | <u>You</u> : Zhèige wǔkuài qián.<br>(This is five dollars.) |
| 2. Nèige duōshao qián? \$2  | Nèige liǎngkuài qián.                                       |
| 3. Zhèiběn duōshao qián? \$40   | Zhèiběn sìshikuài qián.                                     |
| 4. Nèizhāng duōshao qián? \$7   | Nèizhāng qīkuài qián.                                       |
| 5. Zhèifèn duōshao qián? \$12   | Zhèifèn shíèrkuài qián.                                     |
| 6. Nèiběn duōshao qián? \$20  | Nèiběn èrshikuài qián.                                      |
| 7. Zhèifèn duōshao qián? \$4  | Zhèifèn sìkuài qián.  |

D. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèige zìdiǎn duōshao qián?<br>qián?<br>(How much is this [kind of] dictionary?) | <u>You</u> : Zhèiběn zìdiǎn duōshao qián?<br>(How much is this dictionary?) |
| 2. Nèige dītú duōshao qián?  | Nèizhāng dītú duōshao qián?   |
| 3. Zhèige zázhi duōshao qián?  | Zhèiběn zázhi duōshao qián?   |
| 4. Nèige bào duōshao qián?   | Nèifèn bào duōshao qián?  |
| 5. Zhèige lìshǐ duōshao qián?  | Zhèiběn lìshǐ duōshao qián?   |
| 6. Nèige Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?   | Nèifèn Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?  |
| 7. Zhèige Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?  | Zhèiběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?                                       |

E. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Bào duōshao qián?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) copy<br>(How much is the newspaper?) | <u>You</u> : Yí fèn bào duōshao qián?<br>(How much is one newspaper?) |
|--|---|

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 2. Zìdiǎn duōshao qián?      volume       | Yìběn zìdiǎn duōshao qián?         |
| 3. Dìtú duōshao qián?      sheet          | Yìzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?         |
| 4. Zázhi liǎngkuài qián.      volume      | Yìběn zázhi liǎngkuài qián.        |
| 5. Zhōngguo dìtú duōshao qián?<br>sheet   | Yìzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?         |
| 6. Shū liùkuài qián.      volume          | Yìběn shū liùkuài qián.            |
| 7. Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn bākuài qián.<br>volume | Yìběn Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn bākuài qián. |

F. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā xiǎng mǎi dìtú ma?<br>(cue) 3<br>(Is he thinking of<br>buying maps?) | <u>You</u> : Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi sānzhāng<br>dìtú.<br>(Right; he is thinking of<br>buying three maps.) |
| 2. Tā xiǎng mǎi shū ma?      1  | Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn shū.   |
| 3. Tā xiǎng mǎi zìdiǎn ma?      2   | Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi liǎngběn zìdiǎn.   |
| 4. Tā xiǎng mǎi Zhōngwén bào ma?<br>1   | Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi yí fèn Zhōngwén<br>bào.  |
| 5. Tā xiǎng mǎi Měiguó zázhi ma?<br>1   | Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Měiguó<br>zázhi.   |
| 6. Tā xiǎng mǎi Jīngjixué ma?      4  | Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi sìběn Jīngjixué.   |
| 7. Tā xiǎng mǎi Zhèngzhixué ma?<br>2  | Duì le, tā xiǎng mǎi liǎngběn Zhèng-<br>zhixué.   |

G. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhège bào sānkuài qián.<br>(cue) 1<br>(This newspaper is<br>three dollars.) | <u>You</u> : Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yí fèn.<br>(Fine; I'll buy a copy.) |
| 2. Zhège zìdiǎn qíkuài qián.      2   | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi liǎngběn.  |

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| 3. Nàge zázhi sānshikuài qián.<br>1          | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìběn.    |
| 4. Zhège Yīngwén bào wǔkuài qián.<br>1       | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yí fèn.   |
| 5. Nàge dìtú shíèrkuài qián. 3               | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi sānzhāng. |
| 6. Nàge Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn wǔshikuài<br>qián. 2 | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi liǎngběn. |
| 7. Zhège Táiběi dìtú shíwǔkuài<br>qián. 1    | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìzhāng.  |

H. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèifèn bào duōshao<br>qián?<br>(How much is this news-<br>paper?) | <u>You</u> : Zhèige bào duōshao qián yí fèn?<br>(How much is this newspaper per<br>copy?) |
| 2. Zhèiběn zìdiǎn wǔshikuài qián.  | Zhèige zìdiǎn wǔshikuài qián yìběn.   |
| 3. Zhèizhāng dìtú duōshao qián?  | Zhèige dìtú duōshao qián yìzhāng?   |
| 4. Zhèiběn Měiguó shū wǔkuài qián.   | Zhèige Měiguó shū wǔkuài qián yìběn.  |
| 5. Zhèifèn Yīngwén bào duōshao<br>qián?  | Zhèige Yīngwén bào duōshao qián<br>yí fèn?  |
| 6. Zhèiběn zázhi liǎngkuài qián.   | Zhèige zázhi liǎngkuài qián yìběn.  |
| 7. Zhèiběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao<br>qián?  | Zhèige Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián<br>yìběn?   |

I. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhège zázhi duōshao<br>qián?<br>(cue) \$30<br>(How much is this<br>magazine?) | <u>You</u> : Zhège zázhi sānshikuài qián<br>yìběn.<br>(Thirty dollars a copy.) |
| 2. Nàge Táiběi dìtú duōshao qián?<br>\$12   | Nàge Táiběi dìtú shíèrkuài qián<br>yìzhāng.                                    |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?<br>\$3    | Zhège Zhōngwén bào sānkuài qián yí fèn.          |
| 4. Nàge Měiguó zázhi duōshao qián?<br>\$30    | Nàge Měiguó zázhi sānshikuài qián<br>yí bēn.     |
| 5. Zhège Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?<br>\$5     | Zhège Yīngwén bào wǔkuài qián yí fèn.            |
| 6. Nàge Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao<br>qián? \$42 | Nàge Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn sìshìèrkuài<br>qián yí bēn. |
| 7. Zhège Táiwān dìtú duōshao qián?<br>\$10    | Zhège Táiwān dìtú shíkuài qián yí-<br>zhāng.     |

J. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīngwén<br>bào ma?<br>(Do you have English-<br>language newspapers<br>here?) | <u>You</u> : Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào<br>meiyou?<br>(Do you have English-language<br>newspapers here?) |
| OR Nǐmen zhèli mài Yīng-<br>wén bào ma?<br>(Do you sell English-<br>language newspapers<br>here?)                | Nǐmen zhèli mài Yīngwén bào bu<br>mai?<br>(Do you sell English-language<br>newspapers here?)              |
| 2. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén zázhi<br>ma?   | Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén zázhi<br>meiyou?   |
| 3. Nǐmen zhèli mài Táiběi dìtú ma?   | Nǐmen zhèli mài Táiběi dìtú bu mai?   |
| 4. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn<br>ma?  | Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn<br>meiyou?  |
| 5. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn<br>ma?  | Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn<br>meiyou?  |
| 6. Nǐmen zhèli mài Zhōngwén bào ma?  | Nǐmen zhèli mài Zhōngwén bào bu mai?  |

K. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguó shū meiyǒu?  
(cue) yǒu  
(Do you have American books here?)

OR Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguó shū meiyǒu?  
(cue) méiyǒu  
(Do you have American books here?)

You: Yǒu, zài nàli.  
(We do, over there.)

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyǒu.  
(I'm sorry, we don't)

2. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú meiyǒu? yǒu

Yǒu, zài nàli.

3. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngguó lìshǐ meiyǒu? méiyǒu

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyǒu.

4. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Zhōngwén bào meiyǒu? yǒu

Yǒu, zài nàli.

5. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguó zázhi meiyǒu? méiyǒu

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyǒu.

6. Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Yīngwén shū meiyǒu? yǒu

Yǒu, zài nàli.

L. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Bào duōshao qián?  
(cue) zázhi  
(How much is the newspaper?)

You: Bào, zázhi yíòng duōshao qián?  
(How much are the newspaper and the magazine altogether?)

2. Dìtú duōshao qián? zìdiǎn

Dìtú, zìdiǎn yíòng duōshao qián?

3. Zázhi duōshao qián? bào

Zázhi, bào yíòng duōshao qián?

4. Zìdiǎn duōshao qián? dìtú

Zìdiǎn, dìtú yíòng duōshao qián?

5. Bào duōshao qián? zázhi

Bào, zázhi yíòng duōshao qián?

6. Dìtú duōshao qián? zìdiǎn

Dìtú, zìdiǎn yíòng duōshao qián?

7. Zázhi duōshao qián? bào

Zázhi, bào yíòng duōshao qián?



M. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme<br>dìtú?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) Táiběi<br>(What kind of map is<br>he thinking of<br>buying?) | <u>You</u> : Tā xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi<br>dìtú.<br>(He is thinking of buying<br>a map of Taipei.) |
| 2. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme zìdiǎn?<br>Hàn-Yīng  | Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn.   |
| 3. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme bào?<br>Zhōngwén   | Tā xiǎng mǎi yí fèn Zhōngwén bào.   |
| 4. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme shū?<br>Měiguó   | Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Měiguó shū.  |
| 5. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú?<br>Táiwān  | Tā xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiwān dìtú.   |
| 6. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme zázhi?<br>Měiguó   | Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Měiguó zázhi.  |
| 7. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme shū?<br>Yīngwén  | Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Yīngwén shū.   |

UNIT 2

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr diǎnxin.             | I'm going to buy some pastries.                   |
| 2. A: Zhèige xiǎo diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn? | How much are these small pastries per catty?      |
| B: Bāmáo qián yìjīn.                          | Eighty cents a catty.                             |
| 3. A: Gěi wo liǎngjīn.                        | Give me two catties.                              |
| 4. A: Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn.                | Please give me two catties.                       |
| 5. B: Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?               | What else do you want?                            |
| A: Wǒ hái yào qìshuǐ.                         | I want some soda too.                             |
| 6. A: Duōshao qián yìpíng?                    | How much is it per bottle?                        |
| B: Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián.                       | It's twenty-five cents.                           |
| 7. A: Zhèi shì sānkuài qián.                  | Here's three dollars.                             |
| B: Zhǎo ni liùmáo wǔfēn qián.                 | Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.              |
| A: Xièxie. Zàijiàn.                           | Thank you. Good-bye.                              |
| B: Zàijiàn.                                   | Good-bye.   |
| 8. A: Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?          | How much are the large apples per catty?          |
| B: Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.               | The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.      |
| 9. A: Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn?              | How much per catty are the small ones?            |
| B: Sānmáo wǔ.                                 | Thirty-five cents.                                |
| 10. A: Qǐng gěi wo sānjīn nèige xiǎode.       | Please give me three catties of those small ones. |
| B: Hǎo. Sānjīn yíkuài líng wǔ.                | Certainly. Three catties are \$1.05               |
| 11. B: Nín hái yào shénme?                    | What else would you like?                         |
| A: Wǒ bú yào shénme le.                       | I don't want anything else.                       |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 12. júzi          | oranges, tangerines |
| 13. píjiǔ         | beer                |
| 14. yíkuài féizào | one bar of soap     |
| 15. zuò mǎimai    | to do business      |
| 16. dàren         | adult               |
| 17. xiǎoháizi     | child               |



A fruit seller in central Taiwan

VOCABULARY

dà	to be large
dàren	adult
-de	(marker of modification)
diǎnr	a little, some
diǎnxin (yíkuài, yìjīn)	pastry, snack
féizào (yíkuài)	soap
-fēn	cent
gěi	to give
hái	also, additionally
-jīn	catty (1.1 pound)
júzi	oranges, tangerines
-kuài	piece (counter)
líng	zero
mǎimai	business
-máo	dime
píjiǔ	beer
-píng	bottle
píngguǒ (píngguo)	apple
qǐng	please
qìshuǐ	soda, carbonated soft drink
xiǎo	to be small
xiǎoháizi	child
yào	to want
zàijiàn	good-bye
zhǎo	to give change
zuò mǎimai	to do business

(introduced on P-2 tape)

gōngxiāo hézuòshè	supply and marketing cooperative
-------------------	----------------------------------

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr diǎnxin. I'm going to buy some pastries.

### Note on No. 1

Diǎnr: The word yìdiǎnr (or yìdiǎn) is a combination of the number yī, "one," and the counter diǎn, "a dot," "a little bit." The number yī is often toneless, or, as in this case, dropped when its meaning is "a" rather than "one."

The Běijīng version of this word, written diǎnr or yìdiǎnr, is actually pronounced as if written diǎr or yìdiǎr. These words rhyme with the English "tar."

2. A: Zhèige xiǎo diǎnxin duōshao      How much are these small pastries  
      qián yìjīn?                              per catty?  
B: Bāmáo qián yìjīn.                      Eighty cents a catty.

### Notes on No. 2

A jīn is a unit of weight, usually translated as "catty." In most parts of China a jīn equals 1.1 pound.

Bāmáo: You must use the equivalent of "eight dimes" to say "eighty cents." It is wrong to say bāshifēn for "eighty cents."

3. A: Gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.                      Give me two catties.  
4. A: Qǐng ni gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.              Please give me two catties.

### Notes on Nos. 3-4

Indirect object: Notice that the indirect object, wǒ, precedes the direct object, liǎngjīn, just as "me" precedes "two catties" in English.

Gěi	wo	liǎngjīn.
(Give	me	two catties.)

Polite requests: A blunt imperative in Chinese has the same word order as a command in English: (Nǐ), verb, indirect object, direct object. To make a polite request in Chinese, start off with qǐng, "please," or qǐng ni, "please you." More literally, qǐng means "to ask," "to request," but the idiomatic equivalent of qǐng and qǐng ni is "please." Here are the three types of imperatives:

		Gěi	wo	liǎngjīn.	(Give me two catties.)
Qǐng		gěi	wo	liǎngjīn.	(Please give me two catties. OR Give me two catties, please.)
Qǐng	ni	gěi	wo	liǎngjīn.	

5. B: Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?      What else do you want?  
 A: Wǒ hái yào qìshuǐ.                      I want some soda too.

Notes on No. 5

Hái: In exchange 5, hái means something like "in addition": "What do you want a little of in addition?" Since hái is an adverb, it is placed before the verb.

Qìshuǐ, "soda," refers to a carbonated soft drink, not to club soda.

6. A: Duōshao qián yìpíng?                      How much is it per bottle?  
 B: Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián.                      It's twenty-five cents.

Notes on No. 6

Tone change for yī: The number 1, yī, changes tone when followed by another syllable. When followed by a syllable with a Falling tone, yī

has a Rising tone. When followed by syllables with High, Rising, or Low tones, yī has a Falling tone.

HIGH TONE FOLLOWS	RISING TONE FOLLOWS	LOW TONE FOLLOWS	FALLING TONE FOLLOWS
yìjīn	yìpíng	yìběn	yífèn
yìzhāng	yìmáo	yìdiǎn	yìkuài
yìzhī	yìnián		Yíyuè
yìtiān			

Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián: Notice that "twenty-five cents" is expressed in Chinese as dimes plus cents: "two dimes and five cents."

7. A: Zhèi shì sānkuài qián. Here's three dollars.  
 B: Zhǎo ni liùmáo wǔfēn qián. Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.  
 A: Xièxie. Zàijiàn. Thank you. Good-bye.  
 B: Zàijiàn. Good-bye.

Notes on No. 7

Zhèi: In the first sentence of exchange 7, zhèi is used without an attached counter. A specifier was also used without a counter in Nèi shì Míngzú Fàndiàn, "That's the Nationalities Hotel."

The verb zhǎo means "to give change." Zhǎo ni liùmáo wǔfēn qián means something like "I'm giving you sixty-five cents in change."

8. A: Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn? How much are the large apples per catty?  
 B: Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn. The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.
9. A: Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn? How much per catty are the small ones?  
 B: Sānmáo wǔ. Thirty-five cents.

Notes on Nos. 8-9

The words dàde and xiǎode are translated as "large ones" and "small ones." The nonspecific noun "ones" may be used because the specific thing being talked about (apples) was mentioned in an earlier sentence. The marker -de shows that dà and xiǎo modify a noun mentioned earlier in the conversation. Like their English translations "big ones" and "small ones," dàde and xiǎode act as nouns.

Sānmáo wǔ is an abbreviated way of giving a price. The last unit of money (in this case, fēn, "cent") and the word for "money," qián, are left out. The unit omitted is always the next unit below the unit which is expressed. For instance, "three dollars and fifty cents" is sānkuài wǔ. You know that the unit omitted is máo, "dimes," because it is the next unit below kuài, "dollars." A one-unit price such as "three dollars" or "fifty cents" can never be abbreviated this way, because there would be no way of determining the unit marker omitted.

10. A: Qǐng gěi wǒ sānjīn nège xiǎode. Please give me three catties of those small ones.  
 B: Hǎo. Sānjīn yíkuài líng wǔ. Certainly. Three catties are \$1.05.

Notes on No. 10

Sānjīn nège xiǎode: The elements of this phrase appear in the following order: number, counter, specifier, noun. (In Chinese, units of measure, like jīn, act as counters.) Earlier, you learned phrases whose elements appeared in a different order: specifier, number, counter, noun (zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú). In both cases, the word order for the constructions is the same in Chinese and English.

sān	-jīn		nège		xiǎode
(three	catties	of	those		small ones)
nèi	sān		-jīn		xiǎode
(those	three		catties	of	small ones)

Nège is translated as "those" in the first sentence of exchange 10. Strictly speaking, nège can refer only to one item, since -ge is the counter for units. The apples, however, are regarded collectively as one category of things.



Yíkuài líng wǔ: In a price, the word líng is always used for a "zero" in the dimes position. In yíkuài líng wǔ, líng appears in the "dimes" place, so you know that wǔ must refer to cents.

11. B: Nín hái yào shénme?                      What else would you like?  
 A: Wǒ bú yào shenme le.                      I don't want anything else.

Notes on No. 11

Bú yào shenme: The unstressed (and often toneless) word shenme corresponds to the indefinite pronoun "anything" in negative sentences.

Nǐ	yào	shénme?
(You	want	what thing?)

Wǒ	bú yào	shenme.
(I	don't want	anything.)

This construction is commonly used to say "I don't want (I'm not buying, I'm not reading) anything MUCH."

- Nǐ mǎi shénme?                      What are you buying?  
 Wǒ bù mǎi shenme, zhǐ mǎi        I'm not buying anything much; I'm  
 yí fèn bào.                              just buying a newspaper.

Le: In the second sentence of exchange 11, new-situation le is used in a negative sentence. The sentence says that NOW Mr. Anderson does not want anything (while before, of course, he did want things).

- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 12. júzi          | oranges, tangerines |
| 13. píjiǔ         | beer                |
| 14. yíkuài féizào | one bar of soap     |
| 15. zuò mǎimai    | to do business      |
| 16. daren         | adult               |
| 17. xiǎoháizi     | child               |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Júzi: In earlier modules, this word would have been written júzi. Starting in the Money Module, the umlaut (") will be written only after n and l, following the normal spelling rule in Pinyin romanization. You

will have to remember that the letter u after j, q, x, and y is pronounced as if it were written ü.

Yíkuài féizào: The counter used for soap is -kuài. It literally means "a lump" but is also translated as "a piece."

Zuò mǎimai, "to do business/trade"

Tā lái zuò mǎimai le. He has come to do business.

Dàren, "adult," literally, "big person"

Tā yǐjīng shì dàren le. He is already an adult.

Xiǎoháizi: Although háizi means "child," the expression more commonly used is xiǎoháizi, literally, "small child."



C. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Zhèige píjiǔ hěn hǎo.  
(This beer is very good.)

You: Zhèige píjiǔ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìpíng?  
(This beer is very good. How much is it per bottle?)

2. Zhèige júzi hěn hǎo.

Zhèige júzi hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìjīn?

3. Nèige píngguǒ hěn hǎo.

Nèige píngguǒ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìjīn?

4. Zhèige féizào hěn hǎo.

Zhèige féizào hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìkuài?

5. Nèige zìdiǎn hěn hǎo.

Nèige zìdiǎn hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìběn?

6. Zhèige qìshuǐ hěn hǎo.

Zhèige qìshuǐ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìpíng?

7. Nèige dītú hěn hǎo.

Nèige dītú hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìzhāng?

D. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?  
shénme?  
(cue) qìshuǐ  
(What else would you like?)

You: Wǒ hái yào liǎngpíng qìshuǐ.  
(I would like two bottles of soda too.)

OR Nín hái yǒu shénme?  
(cue) píjiǔ  
(What else do you have?)

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngpíng píjiǔ.  
(I have two bottles of beer too.)

2. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?  
féizào

Wǒ hái yào liǎngkuài féizào.

3. Nín hái yǒu shénme? dītú

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngzhāng dītú.

4. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme? júzi

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn júzi.

5. Nín hái yǒu shénme? zìdiǎn

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngběn zìdiǎn.

6. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?  
diǎnxin

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn diǎnxin.

E. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián?  
qián?  
(cue) máo  
(How much are the big apples?)

You: Dàde jǐmáo qián yìjīn?  
(How much [how many dimes] are the big ones per catty?)

2. Dà júzi duōshao qián? máo

Dàde jǐmáo qián yìjīn?

3. Xiǎo zìdiǎn duōshao qián?  
kuài

Xiǎode jǐkuài qián yìběn?

4. Dà dītú duōshao qián? máo

Dàde jǐmáo qián yìzhāng?

5. Xiǎo júzi duōshao qián? máo

Xiǎode jǐmáo qián yìjīn?

6. Dà zìdiǎn duōshao qián? kuài

Dàde jǐkuài qián yìběn?

7. Xiǎo diǎnxīn duōshao qián?  
máo

Xiǎode jǐmáo qián yìjīn?

F. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Dàde duōshao qián yìjīn?  
(cue) 45¢  
(How much are the big ones per catty?)

You: Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.  
(The big ones are forty-five cents a catty.)

2. Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn?  
35¢

Xiǎode sānmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.

3. Xiǎode duōshao qián yíkuài?  
25¢

Xiǎode liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yíkuài.

4. Dàde duōshao qián yìzhāng?  
\$2.15

Dàde liǎngkuài yímáo wǔfēn qián yìzhāng.

5. Xiǎode duōshao qián yìběn?  
\$1.25

Xiǎode yíkuài liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìběn.

6. Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn?  
85¢

Xiǎode bāmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.

7. Dàde duōshao qián yìjīn?  
45¢

Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.

G. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Dà píngguǒ jǐmáo qián yìjīn?<br>(cue) 46¢<br>(How much [how many dimes] are the big apples per catty?) | <u>You</u> : Dà píngguǒ sìnmáo liùfēn qián yìjīn.<br>(The big apples are forty-six cents a catty.) |
| 2. Xiǎo diǎnxīn jǐmáo qián yìjīn?<br>80¢   | Xiǎo diǎnxīn bāmáo qián yìjīn.   |
| 3. Zhōngguó píjiǔ jǐmáo qián yìpíng?<br>25¢  | Zhōngguó píjiǔ liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìpíng.   |
| 4. Zhōngguó dìtú jǐmáo qián yìzhāng?<br>50¢  | Zhōngguó dìtú wǔmáo qián yìzhāng.  |
| 5. Xīnhuá Zìdiǎn jīkuài qián yìběn?<br>\$1.25  | Xīnhuá Zìdiǎn yīkuài liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìběn.  |
| 6. Xiǎo píngguǒ jǐmáo qián yìjīn?<br>30¢   | Xiǎo píngguǒ sānmáo qián yìjīn.  |
| 7. Dà júzi jǐmáo qián yìjīn?<br>40¢  | Dà júzi sìnmáo qián yìjīn.   |

H. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode.<br>(cue) liǎngjīn<br>(I want those small ones.) | <u>You</u> : Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngjīn nèige xiǎode.<br>(Please give me two catties of those small ones.) |
| 2. Wǒ yào nèige dàde. sījīn  | Qǐng ni gěi wo sījīn nèige dàde.  |
| 3. Wǒ yào zhèige xiǎode. sānzhāng  | Qǐng ni gěi wo sānzhāng zhèige xiǎode.  |
| 4. Wǒ yào zhèige dàde. liǎngzhāng  | Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng zhèige dàde.  |
| 5. Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode. yìjīn  | Qǐng ni gěi wo yìjīn nèige xiǎode.  |
| 6. Wǒ yào zhèige dàde. wǔjīn   | Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔjīn zhèige dàde.   |
| 7. Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode. liùjīn   | Qǐng ni gěi wo liùjīn nèige xiǎode.   |

I. Response Drill

For your answers, use specific counters with liǎng-.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?<br>shénme?<br>(cue) píngguǒ<br>(What else would you like?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn píngguǒ.<br>(I would like two cattles of apples.) |
| OR Nín hái yǒu shénme?<br>(cue) qìshuǐ<br>(What else do you have?)                                       | Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngpíng qìshuǐ.<br>(I have two bottles of soda.)                      |
| 3. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?<br>diǎnxin  | Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn diǎnxin.   |
| 4. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?<br>júzi   | Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn júzi.  |
| 5. Nín hái yǒu shénme? féizào  | Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngkuài féizào.   |
| 6. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?<br>dìtú   | Wǒ hái yào liǎngzhāng dìtú.  |
| 7. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?<br>píngguǒ  | Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn píngguǒ.   |

J. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?<br>shénme?<br>(What else would you like?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ bú yào shenme le.<br>(I don't want anything else.) |
| OR Nín hái yǒu shénme?<br>(What else do you have?)                                      | Wǒ méiyǒu shénme le.<br>(I don't have anything else.)              |
| 2. Tā hái yào diǎnr shénme?   | Tā bú yào shenme le.   |
| 3. Tā hái yǒu shénme?   | Tā méiyǒu shénme le.   |
| 4. Wáng Xiānsheng hái yào diǎnr shénme?   | Wáng Xiānsheng bú yào shenme le.                                   |
| 5. Hú Tàitai hái yǒu shénme?  | Hú Tàitai méiyǒu shénme le.  |
| 6. Lǐ Xiānsheng hái yào diǎnr shénme?   | Lǐ Xiānsheng bú yào shenme le.                                     |

### UNIT 3

#### REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. A: Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèige huāpíng.         | Please give me that vase to look at.                   |
| 2. B: Nèige? Zhèige lán de, háishi zhèige hóng de? | Which one? This blue one or this red one?              |
| 3. A: Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?       | Give me both of them to look at.                       |
| B: Hǎo.  | All right?   |
| 4. A: Lán de tài guì le.                           | Certainly.   |
| 5. A: Wǒ mǎi hóng de ba. Hóng de piányi.           | The blue one is too expensive.                         |
| B: Èng, hóng de piányi.                            | I'll buy the red one, I guess. The red one is cheaper. |
| 6. C: Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nèige hǎo?            | Mm, the red one is cheaper.                            |
| D: Sīmǎ Xīn hǎo.                                   | Which of these two students is better?                 |
| 7. A: Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnr de ma?                     | Sīmǎ Xīn is better.                                    |
| B: Yǒu. Nín kàn zhèige zěnmeyàng?                  | Do you have one a little larger?                       |
| 8. A: Zhèige dà de zhēn hǎokàn.                    | We do. What do you think of this one?                  |
| 9. A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dà de ba.                        | This large one is really nice looking.                 |
| B: Nín yào jǐge?                                   | Okay, I'll buy the large one, I guess.                 |
| A: Qǐng gěi wo liǎngge ba.                         | How many do you want?                                  |
|  | How about giving me two, please.                       |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |         |             |
|---------|-------------|
| 10. bái | to be white |
| 11. hēi | to be black |



MON, Unit 3

12. huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
13. lǜ	to be green
14. jiù	to be old, to be used, to be worn
15. xīn	to be new
16. gāo	to be tall
17. ǎi	to be short (of stature)
18. gāoxìng	to be happy
19. nánkàn	to be ugly
20. yībǎ yǔsǎn	one umbrella
21. kàn	to read, to look at, to visit

## VOCABULARY

ǎi	to be short (of stature)
-bǎ	(counter for things with handles)
bái	to be white
gāo	to be tall
gāoxìng	to be happy
guì	to be expensive
háishi	or
hǎo	to be better
hǎokàn	to be beautiful, to be nice looking
hēi	to be black
hóng	to be red
huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
huāpíng	vase
jiù	to be old, to be used, to be worn
kàn	to think (express an opinion)
kàn	to read, to look at, to visit
kànkàn	to look at
lán	to be blue
lǜ	to be green
nánkàn	to be ugly
piányi	to be inexpensive, to be cheap
tài	too (excessive)
xīn	to be new
yǔsǎn (yìbǎ)	umbrella
zěnmeyàng	to be how, how is ___?
zhēn	really

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkān                      Please give me that vase to look at.  
           nèige huāpíng.

Notes on No. 1

Reduplication of action verbs: In the sentence above, the action verb kān appears in reduplicated form: kānkān [stress on first syllable; second syllable unstressed, usually toneless]. The reduplicated verb could also have been formed with yī, "one," between the two syllables: kānyīkān, literally, "to look one look." Kānyīkān or kān is used when you want to say "to have/take a look (at something)."

Many, but not all, action verbs may be reduplicated. Of the verbs you have learned, niàn, shuō, tīng, xiě, and xiǎng may be reduplicated this way.

Reduplication is another way of indicating aspect.\* By using a reduplicated verb, you express the INDEFINITENESS of an action. Use a reduplicated verb when the duration or extent of an action or the amount of a verb object is indefinite. For example, saying Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkān nèige huāpíng indicates an indefinite duration for the action of looking at the vase.

There are several reasons for using a reduplicated verb to indicate indefinite action. In the Reference List sentence above, a speaker asks permission to look at something; therefore, his request must be tentative and undemanding.

Reduplicated verbs are not commonly used with the aspect marker le (perhaps because stressing both the indefiniteness and the completion of an action would not be consistent). When completion le does occur with a reduplicated verb, the marker is placed after the first half of that verb and before the second half. The second half of the reduplicated verb then resembles an object, as in "looked one look" or "thought a thought."

Wǒ kànle kàn nèige huāpíng.            I looked at that vase.

Kān and xiǎng are the two verbs you have learned which may take le when reduplicated.

To make a reduplicated verb negative (with bú or méi) would be as wrong as saying in English "I don't look at it a little." To say that an action was not performed, is habitually not performed, or will not be performed, use the simple form of the verb, not the reduplicated form:

Zhèifèn bào, wo hái méiyǒu            I haven't read this paper yet.  
           kàn.

---

\*The aspect markers -guo, le, and ne have already been introduced. For the meaning of the word "aspect," see BIO, Unit 4.

Wǒ bú kàn Zhōngwén bào.

I don't read Chinese newspapers.

Wǒ bú kàn zhèige.

I'm not going to read this.

The objects of reduplicated action verbs cannot be indefinite. For example, it is wrong to say Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn yige huāpíng, because yige huāpíng, "a vase," is indefinite--which vase is not known. However, reduplicated verbs may have noun objects which are specified, like nèige huāpíng, "that vase."

Examples

Niànnian shū, kànkàn bào dōu hěn hǎo.

Studying a little and reading a little are both nice.

Tā jiù shì shuōshuō.

He's just talking.

Nǐ tīngtīng tā shuō shénme.

Listen to what he is saying.

Tā tiāntiān dōu kànkàn shū, xiěxiē zì.

Every day he reads a little and writes characters a bit.

Nǐ xiǎngxiang tā xìng shénme.

Try to think what his surname is.

(Notice that in some of the examples the verb kàn means "to read," not "to look at.")

2. B: Nèige? Zhèige lán de, háishi zhèige hóng de?

Which one? This blue one or this red one?

Note on No. 2

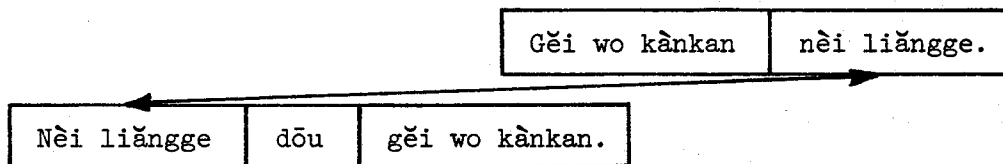
Háishi means "or." In a choice-type question without háishi, both choices must include a verb; but in a question containing háishi, the second verb may be omitted.

Nǐ	yào	zhèige,		yào	nèige?
Nǐ	yào	zhèige	háishi	yào	nèige?
Nǐ	yào	zhèige	háishi		nèige?

3. A: Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma? Give me both of them to look at.  
All right?  
B: Hǎo. Certainly.

Note on No. 3

The word order of the first sentence is determined by the adverb dōu. Normally, an object in a Chinese sentence follows the verb. But any object referred to by dōu must come before dōu. And dōu itself, because it is an adverb, must precede the verb. Therefore, the object nèi liǎngge has been moved to the initial topic position in the sentence above. Compare:



4. A: Lán de tài guì le. The blue one is too expensive.

Note on No. 4

Le: The speaker is using new-situation le to reinforce the meaning of tài, "too." The new situation is the fact that the price is more than the speaker expected.

5. A: Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba. Hóngde piányi. I'll buy the red one, I guess. The red one is cheaper.  
B: Èng, hóngde piányi. Mm, the red one is cheaper.

Notes on No. 5

Piányi: The n in this word is not pronounced but gives a nasal quality to the vowels around it.

The English comparative form "cheaper" has been used for the basic form piányi in the translation of exchange 5. The Chinese says, in effect, "It's

the red one that's cheap." But adjectival verbs usually should be understood as comparatives.

Něige piányi?	Which one is cheaper?
Hóngde piányi ma?	Is the red one cheaper?
Hóngde piányi.	The red one is cheaper.

However, when preceded by adverbs (including the negative adverb bù), adjectival verbs generally lose their comparative meaning.

Zhèige yě piányi.	This one is cheap too.
Zhèige bù piányi.	This one isn't cheap.

When no other adverb is appropriate, an adjectival verb may be made non-comparative by the addition of an unstressed hěn. Since its function is simply to show that the verb is not comparative, it does not have the emphatic sense of stressed hěn or English "very."

Zhèige		piányi.	(This one is		cheaper.)
Zhèige	hěn	piányi.	(This one is		cheap.)
Zhèige	HĚN	piányi.	(This one is	VERY	cheap.)

Èng is actually pronounced /ng/, or like the nasal uh in "uh-huh."

6. C: Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nǐge hǎo? Which of these two students is better?  
 D: Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo. Sīmǎ Xìn is better.

Note on No. 6

Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nǐge hǎo? Compare this Chinese sentence with an English translation:

Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng,	nǐge	hǎo?
([Of] these two students,	which	is better?)

In both English and Chinese, the items being compared begin the sentence, in topic position. This word order is required in Chinese but is somewhat unusual in English.

7. A: Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma? Do you have one a little larger?  
 B: Yǒu. Nín kàn zhèige Wǒ do. What do you think of this  
 zěnmeyàng? one?

Notes on No. 7

Dà yìdiǎnrde: An adjectival verb used in a comparison is often followed by the word yìdiǎn(r): dà yìdiǎnr, "larger by a little bit." Notice that the marker -de comes at the end of the modifying phrase: dà yìdiǎnrde, "one that is larger by a little bit," but that the modified noun which would follow is omitted.

Kàn: The verb kàn means "to look at." Nín kàn, therefore, can simply mean "Look." Often, however, kàn is used to express an opinion and is best translated as "in your/my/his/her view" or, even more idiomatically, by the verb "think."

Nín kàn, huāpíng jiù zài nàr. Look, the vase is right over there.

Wǒ kàn zhèige huāpíng tài guì. I think this vase is too expensive.

Zhèige zěnmeyàng? does not contain the verb shì. Likewise, an answer to this question would not include shì. Compare the Chinese and English versions of these sentences:

Zhèige	zěnmeyàng?
(This	is how?)

Zhèige	hen hǎo.
(This	is good.)

8. A: Zhèige dàde zhēn hǎokàn. This large one is really nice looking.
9. A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dàde ba. Okay, I'll buy the large one, I  
 B: Nín yào yǐge? guess.  
 A: Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba. How many do you want?  
 How about giving me two, please.

Note on No. 9

Ba: You have learned that ba can be used as the marker for a question which expresses supposition about an answer, requiring confirmation from the listener: Nǐ shì Wèi Shàoxiào ba? "You are Major Weiss, aren't you?" In exchange 9, ba is used as the marker for a tentative statement or imperative. The marker ba makes statements less certain and requests less blunt. Like ma, ba is always placed at the end of a sentence.

Wǒ mǎi báide.		(I'll buy the white ones.)
Wǒ mǎi báide	ba.	(I'll buy the white ones, I guess.)
Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge.		(Give me two, please.)
Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge	ba.	(How about giving me two, please.)

10. bái	to be white
11. hēi	to be black
12. huáng	to be yellow, to be brown
13. lǜ	to be green
14. jiù	to be old, to be used, to be worn
15. xīn	to be new
16. gāo	to be tall
17. āi	to be short (of stature)
18. gāoxìng	to be happy
19. nánkàn	to be ugly
20. yībǎ yǔsǎn	one umbrella
21. kàn	to read, to look at, to visit

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Colors: Adjectival verbs of color behave somewhat differently than other adjectival verbs, such as guì and dà. To say in Chinese that something is a certain color, such as blue, you say that it is "a blue one."

Zhèige huāpíng shì lán-de.      This vase is blue.

Nèiběn shū shì hēi-de.      That book is black.

Adjectival verbs: As you learned in BIO, adjectival verbs are state verbs and as such can be made negative only with bù. If the marker le is used in a sentence whose verb is adjectival, the marker is new-situation le. (See BIO, Unit 8, Reference Notes on Nos. 7-8.)



Zuótiān wǒ kànle hěnde huāpíng. Dōu bú guì.

Yesterday I saw a lot of vases.  
None of them were expensive.

Nǐde hái zi hěn gāo le!

Your son is tall now!

Like many other state verbs, adjectival verbs may become process verbs. When this happens, the verb meaning is often changed. (See BIO, Unit 8, Reference Notes on No. 9.)

Wǒde yǔsǎn jiù le.

My umbrella has become old.

Tiān hēi le.

The sky has become black (has darkened).

Jiù is the verb "to be old," "to be used," "to be worn," as opposed to xīn, "to be new." Jiù is not used to mean old in years, or aged.\*

ǎi is the verb "to be short (in stature)," as opposed to gāo, "to be tall." ǎi is not used to mean "short in length."\*\*

Nánkàn, "to be ugly," literally, "to be hard to look at": This is a very blunt way to describe unattractiveness.

---

\*The verb lǎo means "to be old in years." Niánqīng means "to be young."  
\*\*The verb duǎn means "to be short in length." Cháng means "to be long."

VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Colors

What color paper do you want?  
I want \_\_\_\_\_.

Nǐ yào shénme yánsède zhǐ?  
Wǒ yào \_\_\_\_\_ de.

beige  
black  
blue  
brown

gold  
gray  
green  
orange

pink  
purple  
red  
silver  
white  
yellow

light blue  
light green  
light red  
dark blue  
dark green  
dark red

mǐhuáng  
hēi  
lán  
zōngsè  
kāfēisè  
hèsè  
shēn huáng  
jīnhuáng  
huī  
lǜ  
jùhuáng  
jùhóng  
fěnhóng  
zǐ  
hóng  
yínbái  
bái  
huáng

qiǎn lán  
qiǎn lǜ  
qiǎn hóng  
shēn lán  
shēn lǜ  
shēn hóng

Different kinds of

lán tiānlán ("sky blue")  
hǎilán ("sea blue")

lǜ cǎolǜ ("grass green")  
píngguǒlǜ ("apple green")  
cuīlǜ ("emerald green")  
mòlǜ ("ink green," "blackish green")

hóng dǎnhóng ("bright red," "scarlet")  
zhūhóng ("vermilion")  
mèiguīhóng ("rose red")

And one more interesting Chinese color: qīng, "green," "blue," "black"

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

(Here is a new expression you will need in this exercise: nèibǎ yǔsǎn, "that umbrella")

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐng ni gěi wo nèige huāpíng.<br>(Please give me that vase.) | <u>You</u> : Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèige huāpíng.<br>(Please give me that vase to look at.) |
| 2. Qǐng ni gěi wo nèige lǜde.  | Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèige lǜde.   |
| 3. Qǐng ni gěi wo nèibǎ yǔsǎn.   | Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèibǎ yǔsǎn.  |
| 4. Qǐng ni gěi wo nèibǎ dàde.  | Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèibǎ dàde.   |
| 5. Qǐng ni gěi wo nèiběn zìdiǎn.   | Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèiběn zìdiǎn.  |
| 6. Qǐng ni gěi wo nèiběn guǐde.  | Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèiběn guǐde.   |
| 7. Qǐng ni gěi wo nèizhāng dìtú.   | Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèizhāng dìtú.  |

B. Transformation and Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèi liǎngge lán de.<br>(Please give me those two blue ones to look at.) | <u>You</u> : Nèi liǎngge lán de dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?<br>(Give me both of those blue ones to look at. All right?) |
| 2. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèi liǎngge hóng de.   | Nèi liǎngge hóng de dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?   |
| 3. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèi liǎngge báide.   | Nèi liǎngge báide dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?   |
| 4. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèi liǎngge dà de.   | Nèi liǎngge dà de dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?   |
| 5. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèi liǎngge xiǎo de.   | Nèi liǎngge xiǎo de dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?   |
| 6. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèi liǎngge guǐ de.  | Nèi liǎngge guǐ de dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?  |

7. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn nèi liǎngge piányide. Nèi liǎngge piányide dōu gěi wo kànkàn, hǎo ma?

C. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn.<br>( <u>cues</u> ) lán, bái<br>(Please give it to me to look at.) | <u>You</u> : Nèige? Nèige lánde, háishi nèige báide?<br>(Which one? That blue one or that white one?) |
| 2. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn. lán,<br>lǜ   | Nèige? Nèige lánde, háishi nèige lǜde?  |
| 3. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn. hóng,<br>huáng   | Nèige? Nèige hóngde, háishi nèige huángde?  |
| 4. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn. dà,<br>xiǎo  | Nèige? Nèige dàde, háishi nèige xiǎode?   |
| 5. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn. guì,<br>piányi   | Nèige? Nèige guìde, háishi nèige piányide?  |
| 6. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn. huāpíng, yǔsǎn   | Nèige? Nèige huāpíng, háishi nèige yǔsǎn?   |
| 7. Qǐng ni gěi wo kànkàn. dìtú,<br>zìdiǎn  | Nèige? Nèige dìtú, háishi nèige zìdiǎn?   |

D. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Lánde tài guì le.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) hóng<br>(The blue one is too expensive.) | <u>You</u> : Lánde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba.<br>(The blue one is too expensive. I'll buy the red one, I guess.) |
| 2. Lǜde tài guì le. bái  | Lǜde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi báide ba.   |
| 3. Dàde tài guì le. xiǎo   | Dàde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi xiǎode ba.  |
| 4. Dà píngguǒ tài guì le. xiǎo píngguǒ   | Dà píngguǒ tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi xiǎo píngguǒ ba.  |
| 5. Nèige tài guì le. zhèige  | Nèige tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi zhèige ba.   |

- |                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 6. Zhèige tài guì le.      nèige | Zhèige tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi nèige ba. |
| 7. Huángde tài guì le.      lǚ   | Huángde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi lǚde ba. |

E. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Hóngde piányi.<br>(The red one is cheaper.) | <u>You</u> : Hóngde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba.<br>(The red one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the red one, I guess.) |
| 2. Lánde piányi.  | Lánde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi lánde ba.   |
| 3. Huángde piányi.  | Huángde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi huángde ba.   |
| 4. Xiǎode piányi.   | Xiǎode piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi xiǎode ba.   |
| 5. Lǚde piányi.   | Lǚde piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi lǚde ba.   |
| 6. Báide piányi.  | Báide piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi báide ba.   |
| 7. Zhèige piányi.   | Zhèige piányi yìdiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi zhèige ba.   |

F. Transformation Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèi liǎngběn shū shì wǒde.<br>(cue) hǎo<br>(These two books are mine.) | <u>You</u> : Zhèi liǎngběn shū, nǎiběn hǎo?<br>(Which of these two books is better?) |
| 2. Zhèi liǎngkuài féizào shì wǒde. piányi   | Zhèi liǎngkuài féizào, nǎikuài piányi?   |
| 3. Zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú shì wǒde. guì   | Zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú, nǎizhāng guì?  |
| 4. Zhèi liǎngbǎ yǔsǎn shì wǒde. hǎokàn  | Zhèi liǎngbǎ yǔsǎn, nǎibǎ hǎokàn?  |

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 5. Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng shì wǒde.<br>hǎo | Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, něige hǎo? |
| 6. Zhèi liǎngběn zìdiǎn shì wǒde.<br>hǎo  | Zhèi liǎngběn zìdiǎn, něiběn hǎo? |
| 7. Zhèi liǎngfèn bào shì wǒde.<br>guì     | Zhèi liǎngfèn bào, něifèn guì?    |

G. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèige tài guì le.<br>(This one is too expensive.) | <u>You</u> : Zhèige tài guì le. Nǐ yǒu piányi yìdiǎnrde ma?<br>(This one is too expensive. Do you have one a little cheaper?) |
| 2. Zhèiběn tài xiǎo le.  | Zhèiběn tài xiǎo le. Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?  |
| 3. Zhèizhāng tài dà le.  | Zhèizhāng tài dà le. Nǐ yǒu xiǎo yìdiǎnrde ma?  |
| 4. Zhèipíng tài xiǎo le.   | Zhèipíng tài xiǎo le. Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?   |
| 5. Zhèige tài dà le.   | Zhèige tài dà le. Nǐ yǒu xiǎo yìdiǎnrde ma?   |
| 6. Zhèibǎ tài guì le.  | Zhèibǎ tài guì le. Nǐ yǒu piányi yìdiǎnrde ma?  |
| 7. Zhèikuài tài dà le.   | Zhèikuài tài dà le. Nǐ yǒu xiǎo yìdiǎnrde ma?   |

H. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèige dàde hǎokàn ma?<br>(Is this large one nice looking?) | <u>You</u> : Zhèige dàde zhēn hǎokàn.<br>(This large one is really nice looking.) |
| 2. Nèige xiǎode hǎokàn ma?  | Nèige xiǎode zhēn hǎokàn.   |
| 3. Zhèige lán de guì ma?  | Zhèige lán de zhēn guì.   |
| 4. Nèibǎ yūsǎn hǎokàn ma?   | Nèibǎ yūsǎn zhēn hǎokàn.  |

- |                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 5. Zhèige huāpíng dà ma?             | Zhèige huāpíng zhēn dà.             |
| 6. Nèizhāng Zhōngguó dìtú hǎokàn ma? | Nèizhāng Zhōngguó dìtú zhēn hǎokàn. |
| 7. Zhèiběn zìdiǎn guì ma?            | Zhèiběn zìdiǎn zhēn guì.            |

I. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nèige hǎokàn?<br>(Which one is better looking?) | <u>You</u> : Zhèige hǎokàn yìdiǎnr.<br>(This one is a little better looking.) |
| OR Nèige hǎokàn ma?<br>(Is that one nice looking?)                  | Nèige zhēn hǎokàn.<br>(That one is really nice looking.)                      |
| 2. Nǎiběn piányi?   | Zhèiběn piányi yìdiǎnr.   |
| 3. Nèiběn piányi ma?  | Nèiběn zhēn piányi.   |
| 4. Nǎibǎ guì?   | Zhèibǎ guì yìdiǎnr.   |
| 5. Nèibǎ dàde guì ma?   | Nèibǎ dàde zhēn guì.  |
| 6. Nèizhāng hǎo?  | Zhèizhāng hǎo yìdiǎnr.  |

J. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nín kàn zhèige dàde zěnmeyàng?<br>Zhēn hǎo.<br>(What do you think of this large one?<br>It's really nice.) | <u>You</u> : Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dàde.<br>(Okay, I'll buy the large one.) |
| 2. Nín kàn nèige lán de zěnmeyàng?<br>Zhēn hǎo.  | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi lán de.   |
| 3. Nín kàn zhèige hóng de zěnmeyàng?<br>Zhēn hǎo.  | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi hóng de.  |
| 4. Nín kàn nèige xiǎo de zěnmeyàng?<br>Zhēn hǎokàn.  | Hǎo, wǒ mǎi xiǎo de.  |

5. Nín kàn zhèiběn zázhi zěnmeyàng? Hǎo, wǒ mǎi zhèiběn.  
Zhēn hǎokàn.
6. Nín kàn nèige huāpíng zěnmeyàng? Hǎo, wǒ mǎi nèige.  
Zhēn hǎo.
7. Nín kàn zhèibǎ yūsǎn zěnmeyàng? Hǎo, wǒ mǎi zhèibǎ.  
Zhēn hǎo.

K. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Nín yào jǐge?  
(cue) èr  
(How many do you want?)  
You: Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba.  
(How about giving me two,  
please.)
2. Nín yào jǐběn? sì Qǐng gěi wǒ sìběn ba.
3. Nín yào jǐfèn? yī Qǐng gěi wǒ yīfèn ba.
4. Nín yào jǐzhāng? shí Qǐng gěi wǒ shízhāng ba.
5. Nín yào jǐbǎ? èr Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngbǎ ba.
6. Nín yào jǐpíng? sān Qǐng gěi wǒ sānpíng ba.
7. Nín yào jǐkuài? wǔ Qǐng gěi wǒ wǔkuài ba.



UNIT 4

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A: Nǐ jiālìde dōngxì dōu dào le ma?                           | Have all your household things arrived?   |
| B: Yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.                              | Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.                                    |
| 2. C: Zhèxiè zázhi nǐ kàn le ma?                                 | Have you read these magazines?  |
| D: Zhèxiè zázhi, yǒude wǒ kàn le, yǒude wǒ hái méi kàn.          | Some of these magazines I've read, and some I haven't read yet.                     |
| 3. B: Zuótiān wǒ mǎile yìdiǎn pánziwǎn.                          | Yesterday I bought some dishes.   |
| 4. *A: Nín mǎi shénme le?  | What did you buy?   |
| B: Wǒ mǎi fànwǎn le.   | I bought rice bowls.  |
| 5. A: Nǐ mǎile duōshao?  | How many did you buy?   |
| B: Wǒ mǎile shíge fànwǎn, shíge dà pánzi.                        | I bought ten rice bowls and ten large plates.                                       |
| 6. A: Nàxiè pánziwǎn shì shénme yánsède?                         | What color are those dishes?  |
| B: Shì lánde.  | They're blue ones.  |
| A: À, wǒ yě xǐhuan lánde.  | Oh, I like blue ones too.   |
| 7.**A: Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?                              | Where were they bought?   |
| B: Shì zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.                                    | They were bought at the First Company.  |
| 8. B: Tāmen mǎide dōngxì zhēn hǎo.                               | The things they sell are really nice.   |
| 9. B: Tāmen mǎide pánziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn. Kěshì guì yìdiǎn. | Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive. |
| 10. B: Wǒ mǎide nàxiè pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì. Guìde wǒ méi mǎi. | All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.  |

---

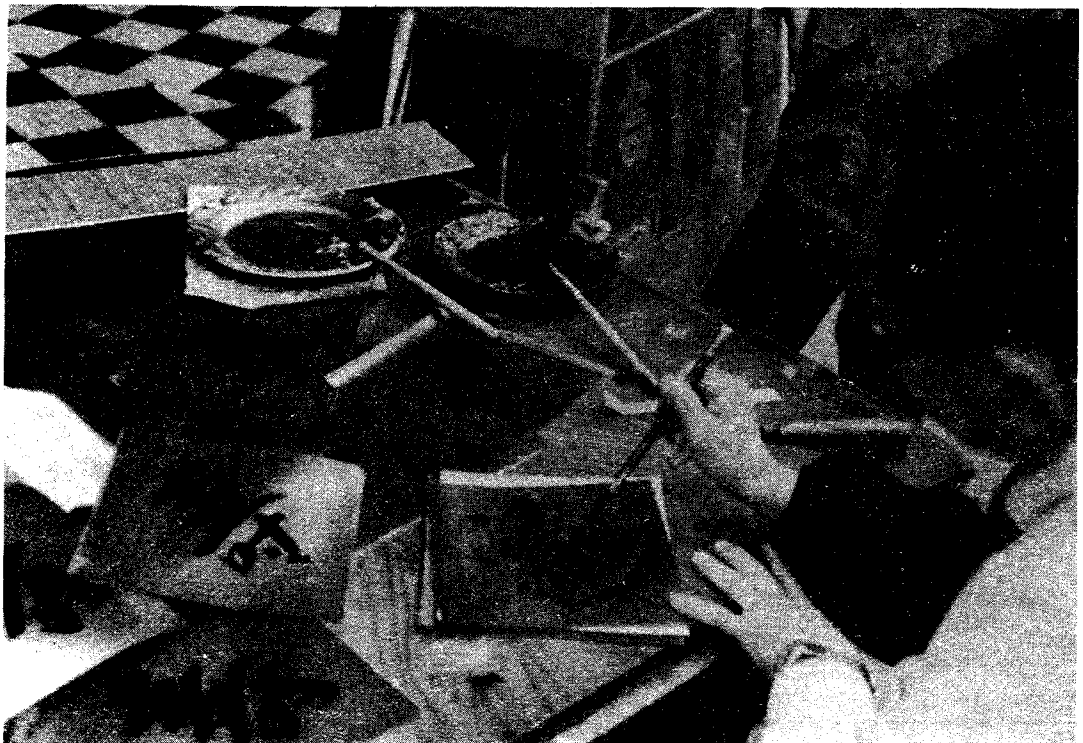
\*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

\*\*This exchange does not occur until No. 11 on the P-1 tape.

11. B: Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo.  
Shì zài shénme dìfang  
mǎide? This teacup of yours is very nice.  
Where was it bought?
- A: Yě shì zài Dìyī Gōngsī  
mǎide. It was bought at the First Company  
too.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 12. yíge bīngxiāng | one refrigerator |
| 13. yìzhāng dītǎn  | one rug          |
| 14. yíge shūjiàzi  | one bookcase     |
| 15. yìbǎ yǐzi      | one chair        |
| 16. yìzhāng zhuōzi | one table        |



Writing auspicious characters on red paper at Chinese New Year's.  
People buy these decorations to hang on doors.

## VOCABULARY

à	Oh!
bīngxiāng	refrigerator
chábēi (yíge)	teacup
dìtān (yìzhāng)	rug
Dìyī Gōngsī	the First Company (department store in Taipei)
dōngxī	thing
fànwǎn	rice bowl
gōngsī	company
kěshi	but
nèixie (nàxie)	those
pánzi	plate
pánziwǎn	dishes
shūjiàzi	bookcase
wǎn	bowl
-xie (-xiē)	(counter for an indefinite plural number of things)
xǐhuan	to like
yánsè	color
yǐzi (yǐbǎ)	chair
yǒude	some
zhèixie (zhèxie)	these
zhuōzi (yìzhāng)	table
<u>(introduced on P-2 tape)</u>	
cháyè	tea (literally, "tea leaves")

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Nǐ jiālide dōngxi dōu dào le ma? Have all your household things arrived?  
 B: Yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào. Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.
2. C: Zhèxie zázhi, nǐ kàn le ma? Have you read these magazines?  
 D: Zhèxie zázhi, yǒude wǒ kàn le, yǒude wǒ hái méi kàn. Some of these magazines I've read, and some I haven't read yet.

Notes on Nos. 1-2

Yǒude: Like its English equivalent "some," yǒude may be used either with the noun it modifies, as in yǒude dōngxi, "some things," or by itself, when the noun it modifies is obvious from the context.

Yǒude	dōngxi	dào le.	(Some	things	have arrived.)
Yǒude		dào le.	(Some		have arrived.)

Neither yǒude nor a noun modified by that word can follow the verb. When yǒude is the grammatical object of the verb, it must precede the subject, in topic position.

Yǒude	wǒ	mài le.
(Some	I	sold.)

The counter -xie is added to the specifiers zhè, "this," and nà, "that," to make the plural specifiers zhèxie, "these," and nàxie, "those." These plural specifiers are used only when the number of items is not mentioned. "These apples" is zhèxie píngguǒ, but "these TWO apples" is zhè liǎngge píngguǒ, without the -xie.

In zhèxie zázhi, -xie acts as a counter for an indefinite number of items. You might think of the phrase as meaning "a bunch of."

zhè	-běn	zázhi	(this magazine)
zhè	-xie	zázhi	(that bunch of/those magazines)

Zhèxie zázhi, yǒude...: In the last sentence in exchange 2, yǒude is the topic of wǒ kàn le and wǒ hái méi kàn. Zhèxie zázhi, "these magazines," is the topic of the whole sentence, naming the set of items from which "some" were selected.

Zhèxie zázhi,	yǒude	wǒ kàn le....
([Of] these magazines,	<u>some</u>	I have read....)

"Some of these magazines  
I've read...."

3. B: Zuótiān wǒ mǎile yìdiǎn pánziwǎn. Yesterday I bought some dishes.
4. A: Nǐn mǎi shénme le? What did you buy?  
B: Wǒ mǎi fànwǎn le. I bought rice bowls.
5. A: Nǐ mǎile duōshao? How many did you buy?  
B: Wǒ mǎile shíge fànwǎn, shíge dà pánzi. I bought ten rice bowls and ten large plates.

Notes on Nos. 3-5

The noun zuótiān, "yesterday," is a time word. Time words are placed before or after the subject but always before the verb. In No. 3, zuótiān appears in the topic position, before the subject, instead of directly before the verb.

Adverbs such as yě, "also"; hái, "still"; zhǐ, "only"; and jiù, "only" also precede verbs. But these words cannot be placed before the subject.

Tā zuótiān bú zài.	He wasn't here yesterday.
Zuótiān wǒ méi kàn bào.	I didn't read the paper yesterday.
Tā yě lái.	He is also coming.

Le: The sentences in No. 3 and No. 5 focus on how many items the sentence object refers to. Such sentences have AMOUNT OBJECTS. In sentences with amount objects, completion le immediately follows the verb. This rule applies likewise to duration sentences, which involve AMOUNTS of time.

Wǒ mǎile shíge fànwǎn.	I bought ten rice bowls.
Wǒ zhùle shíge yuè.	I stayed ten months.

New-situation le may be added to both examples, with the meaning "so far."

Wǒ mǎile shíge fānfǎn le. I have bought ten rice bowls (so far).

Wǒ zhùle shíge yuè le. I have stayed ten months (so far).

The sentences in exchange 4 focus on WHAT the sentence object refers to, not on how many. Such sentences have NONAMOUNT OBJECTS. In sentences with nonamount objects, completion le follows the object at the end of the sentence.

Wǒ mǎi			fānwǎn	<u>le</u> .	(I bought rice bowls.)
Wǒ mǎi	- <u>le</u>	shíge	fānwǎn.		(I bought ten rice bowls.)

Duōshao, or jǐge, and yìdiǎn are amount objects, since they ask or answer "how many."

Nǐ mǎile duōshao/jǐge? How many did you buy?

Wǒ mǎile yìdiǎn. I bought a little.

Shénme is a nonamount object, since it asks "what."

Nǐ mǎi shénme le? What did you buy?

To some speakers, the question and answer Nǐ mǎile shénme? Wǒ mǎile fānwǎn are acceptable.

Variation in speech: Individual variations in language usage among speakers of Chinese always seem to be a headache for students. You may have already heard your teachers say "This way is right, but that way is right too." In writing this course, the practice has been not to give only one "right" way to say things but rather to point out major differences in usage that you are likely to find.

Chinese speakers with different backgrounds and experience frequently have varying opinions about what is acceptable speech, sometimes feeling quite strongly about what is "correct." There will inevitably be instances when even two of your teachers disagree about the acceptable way to express a thought. In such cases, the social differences in the situations which the teachers are envisioning would probably make different speech appropriate in each situation.

Rather than trying to find "the right way" to say something, try to associate the different ways of expressing a thought with their social contexts. AND, adjust your speech to the people you are speaking with. In this way, you will learn as much as possible, and your speech will be accepted by a wide range of people.

6. A: Nàxie pánziwǎn shì shénme yánsède?      What color are those dishes?  
 B: Shì lán-de.      They're blue ones.  
 A: A, wǒ yě xǐhuan lán-de.      Oh, I like blue ones too.

Note on No. 6

Shì lán-de: In English, you would probably describe the color of the dishes by saying "They're blue." In Chinese, you say "They're blue ones," shì lán-de, turning the color word into a noun by adding the marker -de. Notice that the question uses the same pattern:

Nàxie pánziwǎn	<u>shì</u>	shénme yánsè	<u>-de?</u>
(Those dishes	are	what color	ones?)

7. A: Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?      Where were they bought?  
 B: Shì zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.      They were bought at the First Company.

Notes on No. 7

Shénme dìfang means, literally, "what place." This expression is often used instead of nǎr or nǎli when asking about a specific location.

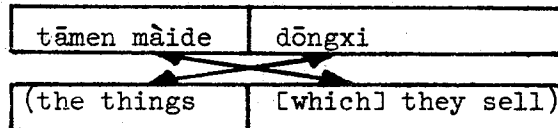
Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide? is translated into English with a passive verb: "were bought." The sentence must be translated this way because no subject is mentioned--the sentence does not state who did the buying. In Chinese, the verb form remains the same whether or not the subject is mentioned.

Wǒ	shì	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide	chábēi.	(I bought the cups at the First Company.)
	Shì	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide.		(They were bought at the First Company.)
Chábēi	shì	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide.		(The cups were bought at the First Company.)

8. B: Tāmen mǎide dōngxi zhēn hǎo. The things they sell are really nice.

Note on No. 8

Tāmen mǎide dōngxi: This noun phrase consists of a noun, dōngxi, "things," preceded by the clause which modifies it, tāmen mǎide, "(which) they sell."



In Chinese, modifying clauses, like all other modifiers, precede the element which is modified. In English, modifying clauses follow the modified element, often beginning with "who," "which," "that," and so on.

Tā shuōde huà wǒ dōu bù dǒng. I don't understand anything he says.

Tā xiěde zì zhēn hǎokàn. The characters he writes are really beautiful.

Nǐ mǎide píngguǒ hěn piányi. The apples that you bought are really cheap.

Tā xiěde shū wǒ hěn xiǎng kàn. I really want to read the book which he wrote.

9. B: Tāmen mǎide pánziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn. Kěshi guì yìdiǎn. Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive.
10. B: Wǒ mǎide nàxiē pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì. Guìde wǒ méi mǎi. All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.
11. B: Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo. Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide? This teacup of yours is very nice. Where was it bought?  
A: Yě shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide. It was bought at the First Company too.



Note on Nos. 10-11

Nǐde zhège chábēi, wǒ mǎide nàxiē pánziwǎn: Possessives always precede specifiers in Chinese, and modifying clauses usually precede specifiers. This is the opposite of English word order for the same elements. Compare:

nǐde	zhège	chábēi	
	(this	teacup	of yours)

wǒ mǎide	nàxiē	pánziwǎn	
	(those	dishes	[which] I bought)



The Shànghǎi Friendship Store features Chinese antiques.  
 (NOTE: Arabic numerals are in general use throughout China.)

## VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Things in a Classroom

calendar	by the day	rìlì
	by the month	yuèlì
	by the year	niánlì
chair		yǐzi
chalk		fěnbǐ
chalkboard		hēibǎn
chalkboard eraser		(hēi)bǎncā(r)
desk		xiězìtái, shūzhuō(r)
desk lamp		táidēng
eraser (pencil)		xiàngpí
globe		dìqiúyí
map		dìtú
notebook (bound pages)		bǐjìběn(r)
notebook (loose-leaf)		huóyèjiāzi
notes		bǐjì
pencil sharpener		zhuànbǐdāo
ruler		chǐzi
stapler		dìngshūjī
student		xuésheng
table		zhuōzi
teacher		lǎoshī
textbook		kèběn(r)
		jiàokēshū
typewriter		dǎzìjī

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nèige dōngxi dào le ma?<br>(Has that thing arrived?) | <u>You</u> : Nèixie dōngxi dōu dào le ma?<br>(Have all those things arrived?) |
| 2. Nèibǎ yǐzi lái le ma?   | Nèixie yǐzi dōu lái le ma?  |
| 3. Nèige shūjiàzi dào le ma?   | Nèixie shūjiàzi dōu dào le ma?  |
| 4. Nèiběn shū dào le ma?   | Nèixie shū dōu dào le ma?   |
| 5. Nèizhāng dìtú lái le ma?  | Nèixie dìtú dōu lái le ma?  |
| 6. Nèiběn zìdiǎn dào le ma?  | Nèixie zìdiǎn dōu dào le ma?  |
| 7. Nèiběn zázhi lái le ma?   | Nèixie zázhi dōu lái le ma?   |

B. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Dàde wǒ méi mǎi.<br>(I didn't buy the big ones.) | <u>You</u> : Dàde wǒ dōu méi mǎi.<br>(I didn't buy any of the big ones.) |
| 2. Nèixie shū wǒ méi kàn.  | Nèixie shū wǒ dōu méi kàn.   |
| 3. Lán de wǒ méi mǎi.  | Lán de wǒ dōu méi mǎi.   |
| 4. Nèixie shū wǒ méi niàn.   | Nèixie shū wǒ dōu méi niàn.  |
| 5. Xiǎode wǒ méi mǎi.  | Xiǎode wǒ dōu méi mǎi.   |
| 6. Zhèixie dìtǎn wǒ méi mǎi.   | Zhèixie dìtǎn wǒ dōu méi mǎi.  |
| 7. Dà zhuōzi wǒ méi mǎi.   | Dà zhuōzi wǒ dōu méi mǎi.  |

C. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ jiālide dōngxi dōu dào le ma?<br>(Have all your household things arrived?) | <u>You</u> : Yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.<br>(Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.) |
|---|---|

- |                                      |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 2. Nèixie zázhi nǐ dōu kàn le ma?    | Yǒude kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn.   |
| 3. Nǐde péngyou dōu lái le ma?       | Yǒude lái le, yǒude hái méi lái.   |
| 4. Nèixie dìtān nǐ dōu mài le ma?    | Yǒude mài le, yǒude hái méi mài.   |
| 5. Zhèixie shū nǐ dōu niàn le ma?    | Yǒude niàn le, yǒude hái méi niàn. |
| 6. Nǐmen háizi dōu zǒu le ma?        | Yǒude zǒu le, yǒude hái méi zǒu.   |
| 7. Nèixie shūjiāzi nǐ dōu mài le ma? | Yǒude mài le, yǒude hái méi mài.   |

D. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ jiālide dōngxi dōu dào le ma?<br>(cue) dōu<br>(Have all your household things arrived?) | <u>You</u> : Dōu dào le.<br>(All of them have arrived.)  |
| OR Nèixie zázhi nǐ dōu kàn le ma?<br>(cue) yǒude<br>(Have you looked at all those magazines?)                  | Yǒude kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn.<br>(Some of them I've looked at, and some of them I haven't looked at yet.) |
| 2. Nèixie bào nǐ dōu kàn le ma?<br>dōu   | Dōu kàn le.  |
| 3. Nèi sānběn shū nǐ dōu niàn le ma?<br>dōu  | Dōu niàn le.   |
| 4. Nǐ péngyou dōu lái le ma?<br>yǒude  | Yǒude lái le, yǒude hái méi lái.   |
| 5. Zhuōzi, yǐzi dōu mǎi le ma?<br>dōu  | Dōu mǎi le.  |
| 6. Zhèngzhixué nǐ dōu niàn le ma?<br>yǒude   | Yǒude niàn le, yǒude hái méi niàn.   |

E. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Tā mǎi shénme le?  
(cue) pánziwǎn  
(What did he buy?)

You: Tā mǎi pánziwǎn le.  
(He bought dishes.)

2. Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?  
yǔsǎn

Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi yǔsǎn le.

3. Nǐ mǎi shénme le? dìtǎn

Wǒ mǎi dìtǎn le.

4. Hú Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?  
zhuōzi

Hú Tóngzhì mǎi zhuōzi le.

5. Tā dìdi mǎi shénme le?  
huāpíng

Tā dìdi mǎi huāpíng le.

6. Tā mǔqīn mǎi shénme le? yǐzi

Tā mǔqīn mǎi yǐzi le.

7. Tā àiren mǎi shénme le?  
shūjiàzi

Tā àiren mǎi shūjiàzi le.

F. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Zhāng Tàitai mǎi shénme  
le?  
(cue) shíge fànwǎn  
(What did Mrs. Zhāng  
buy?)

You: Zhāng Tàitai mǎile shíge fànwǎn.  
(Mrs. Zhāng bought ten rice  
bowls.)

2. Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?  
liǎngbǎ yǐzi

Wáng Tóngzhì mǎile liǎngbǎ yǐzi.

3. Hú Xiānsheng mǎi shénme le?  
yìzhāng zhuōzi

Hú Xiānsheng mǎile yìzhāng zhuōzi.

4. Lǐ Xiānsheng mǎi shénme le?  
yíge shūjiàzi

Lǐ Xiānsheng mǎile yíge shūjiàzi.

5. Lǐ Tàitai mǎi shénme le?  
yìzhāng dìtǎn

Lǐ Tàitai mǎile yìzhāng dìtǎn.

6. Hú Tàitai mǎi shénme le?  
sìge chábēi

Hú Tàitai mǎile sìge chábēi.

7. Wáng Xiānsheng mǎi shénme le?  
sānge pánzi

Wáng Xiānsheng mǎile sānge pánzi.

G. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā mǎi dà pánzi le.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) duōshao<br>(He bought large dishes.) | <u>You</u> : Tā mǎile duōshao dà pánzi?<br>(How many large dishes did he buy?) |
| OR Tā mǎi píngguǒ le.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) jǐ<br>(He bought apples.)                              | Tā mǎile jǐge píngguǒ?<br>(How many apples did he buy?)                        |
| 2. Wáng Tàitai mǎi huāpíng le.<br>jǐ   | Wáng Tàitai mǎile jǐge huāpíng?  |
| 3. Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎi shūjiàzi le.<br>duōshao   | Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎile duōshao shūjiàzi?  |
| 4. Hú Tàitai mǎi yīzi le. jǐ   | Hú Tàitai mǎile jǐbǎ yīzi?   |
| 5. Zhāng Tàitai mǎi féizào le.<br>duōshao  | Zhāng Tàitai mǎile duōshao féizào?   |
| 6. Wú Tàitai mǎi dītǎn le. jǐ  | Wú Tàitai mǎile jǐzhāng dītǎn?   |

H. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā mǎi shénme le?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) fànwǎn<br>(What did he buy?) | <u>You</u> : Tā mǎi fànwǎn le.<br>(He bought rice bowls.) |
| OR Tā mǎi shénme le?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) shíge fànwǎn<br>(What did he buy?)            | Tā mǎile shíge fànwǎn.<br>(He bought ten rice bowls.)     |
| 2. Tā mǎi shénme le? yìdiǎnr pánziwǎn  | Tā mǎile yìdiǎnr pánziwǎn.                                |
| 3. Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? yūsǎn   | Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi yūsǎn le.                                |
| 4. Wáng Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? liǎngbǎ yīzi  | Wáng Tóngzhì mǎile liǎngbǎ yīzi.                          |
| 5. Tā mǎi shénme le? sìzhāng dītǎn   | Tā mǎile sìzhāng dītǎn.                                   |
| 6. Hú Tóngzhì mǎi shénme le? yìdiǎn júzi   | Hú Tóngzhì mǎile yìdiǎn júzi.                             |

I. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nèixie shì shénme yánsède?<br>sède?<br>(cue) lán<br>(What color are those?) | <u>You</u> : Nèixie shì lán de.<br>(Those are blue.) |
| 2. Dìtǎn shì shénme yánsè de?<br>hóng   | Dìtǎn shì hóng de.                                   |
| 3. Shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>huáng  | Shūjiàzi shì huáng de.                               |
| 4. Nèibǎ yīzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>bái  | Nèibǎ yīzi shì bái de.                               |
| 5. Nǐde zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>lǜ  | Wǒde zhuōzi shì lǜ de.                               |
| 6. Tāde dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède?<br>hóng   | Tāde dìtǎn shì hóng de.                              |
| 7. Dàde shì shénme yánsède?      lán  | Dàde shì lán de.                                     |

J. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Pánzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>yánsède?<br>(cue) that<br>(What color is the plate [are the plates]?) | <u>You</u> : Nèige pánzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>(What color is that plate?) |
| 2. Zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>those   | Nèixie zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède?   |
| 3. Yīzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>this  | Zhèibǎ yīzi shì shénme yánsède?   |
| 4. Shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède?<br>these   | Zhèixie shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède?  |
| 5. Dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède?<br>that   | Nèizhāng dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède?  |
| 6. Huāpíng shì shénme yánsède?<br>those  | Nèixie huāpíng shì shénme yánsède?  |

7. Yǔsǎn shì shénme yánsède?  
this

Zhèibǎ yǔsǎn shì shénme yánsède?

K. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Shì Zhōngguó shū.  
(cue) mǎi  
(It's a Chinese book.)

You: Tā mǎide shū shì Zhōngguó shū.  
(The book he bought [is buying]  
is a Chinese book.)

2. Shì Měiguó zhuōzi. xǐhuan

Tā xǐhuande zhuōzi shì Měiguó zhuōzi.

3. Shì Rìběn shūjiàzi. mǎi

Tā mǎide shūjiàzi shì Rìběn shūjiàzi.

4. Shì Yīngguó zázhi. kàn

Tā kànde zázhi shì Yīngguó zázhi.

5. Shì Zhōngguó pánzi. xǐhuan

Tā xǐhuande pánzi shì Zhōngguó pánzi.

6. Shì Fàguó dìtǎn. mǎi

Tā mǎide dìtǎn shì Fàguó dìtǎn.

7. Shì Qīngdǎo píjiǔ. mǎi

Tā mǎide píjiǔ shì Qīngdǎo píjiǔ.

L. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Tā mǎide chábēi zhēn  
guì.  
(The teacups he sells  
are really expensive.)

You: Tā mǎide chábēi shì guìde.  
(The teacups he sells are  
expensive ones.)

2. Tā mǎide féizào zhēn hǎo.

Tā mǎide féizào shì hǎode.

3. Tā mǎide dìtǎn zhēn dà.

Tā mǎide dìtǎn shì dàde.

4. Tā mǎide dìtǎn zhēn guì.

Tā mǎide dìtǎn shì guìde.

5. Tā mǎide yīzi zhēn xiǎo.

Tā mǎide yīzi shì xiǎode.

6. Tā mǎide pánzi zhēn piányi.

Tā mǎide pánzi shì piányide.

7. Tā mǎide fànwan zhēn hǎo.

Tā mǎide fànwan shì hǎode.



M. Transformation and Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tā mǎi shū le.<br/>                           (cue) piányi<br/>                           (He bought books.)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Tā mǎi shū le.<br/>                           (cue) piányide<br/>                           (He bought books.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tā mǎide shū zhēn piányi.<br/>                   (The books he bought are really<br/>                   cheap.)</p> <p>Tā mǎide shū shi piányide.<br/>                   (The books he bought are cheap<br/>                   ones.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tā kàn shū le. Zhōngguo shū</p>  | <p>Tā kànde shū shi Zhōngguo shū.</p>  |
| <p>3. Zhào Xiānsheng kàn dìtú le.<br/>             dà</p>  | <p>Zhào Xiānsheng kànde dìtú zhēn dà.</p>  |
| <p>4. Zhōu Tàitai mǎi dìtǎn le.<br/>             guǐde</p>   | <p>Zhōu Tàitai mǎide dìtǎn shì guǐde.</p>  |
| <p>5. Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎi zhuōzi le.<br/>             Měiguó zhuōzi</p>  | <p>Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎide zhuōzi shì<br/>             Měiguó zhuōzi.</p>  |
| <p>6. Tā mǎi shūjiàzi le. hǎo</p>  | <p>Tā mǎide shūjiàzi zhēn hǎo.</p>   |

N. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tāmen mǎide pánziwǎn<br/>                           zhēn hǎokàn.<br/>                           (cue) guǐ<br/>                           (The dishes they bought<br/>                           [are buying] are<br/>                           really beautiful.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tāmen mǎide pánziwǎn zhēn<br/>                   hǎokàn, kěshi guǐ yìdiǎn.<br/>                   (The dishes they bought [are<br/>                   buying] are really beautiful,<br/>                   but they are a bit expensive.)</p> |
| <p>2. Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎide yǔsǎn zhēn<br/>             hǎokàn. xiǎo</p>   | <p>Zhāng Xiānsheng mǎide yǔsǎn zhēn<br/>             hǎokàn, kěshi xiǎo yìdiǎn.</p>  |
| <p>3. Wáng Tàitai mǎide dìtǎn hěn<br/>             hǎokàn. dà</p>  | <p>Wáng Tàitai mǎide dìtǎn hěn hǎokàn,<br/>             kěshi dà yìdiǎn.</p>   |
| <p>4. Wǒmen mǎide shūjiàzi bù hǎokàn.<br/>             piányi</p>  | <p>Wǒmen mǎide shūjiàzi bù hǎokàn, kěshi<br/>             piányi yìdiǎn.</p>   |
| <p>5. Hú Xiānsheng mǎide chábēi zhēn<br/>             hǎokàn. guǐ</p>  | <p>Hú Xiānsheng mǎide chábēi zhēn hǎokàn,<br/>             kěshi guǐ yìdiǎn.</p>   |
| <p>6. Tā mǎide huāpíng bù hǎokàn.<br/>             piányi</p>  | <p>Tā mǎide huāpíng bù hǎokàn, kěshi<br/>             piányi yìdiǎn.</p>   |
| <p>7. Lǐ Tàitai mǎide zhuōzi hěn<br/>             hǎokàn. guǐ</p>  | <p>Lǐ Tàitai mǎide zhuōzi hěn hǎokàn,<br/>             kěshi guǐ yìdiǎn.</p>   |

O. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tāde pánziwǎn tài guǐ.  
(His dishes are too expensive.)

You: Tāde nèixie pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guǐ.  
(All those dishes of his are not too expensive.)

2. Tāde zhuōzi tài dà.

Tāde nèixie zhuōzi dōu bú tài dà.

3. Wōde yīzi tài piányi.

Wōde nèixie yīzi dōu bú tài piányi.

4. Wáng Xiānshengde dītǎn tài guǐ.

Wáng Xiānshengde nèixie dītǎn dōu bú tài guǐ.

5. Wáng Tàिताide yūsǎn tài hǎo.

Wáng Tàिताide nèixie yūsǎn dōu bú tài hǎo.

6. Hú Tàिताide shūjiàzi tài xiǎo.

Hú Tàिताide nèixie shūjiàzi dōu bú tài xiǎo.

7. Tāde huāpíng tài hǎokàn.

Tāde nèixie huāpíng dōu bú tài hǎokàn.

P. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Nǐde chábēi hěn hǎo.  
(Your teacup is very nice.)

You: Nǐde zhèige chábēi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?  
(This teacup of yours is very nice. Where did you buy it?)

2. Tāde pánzi hěn hǎo.

Tāde zhèige pánzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

3. Zhāng Tóngzhìde zhuōzi hěn hǎo.

Zhāng Tóngzhìde zhèige zhuōzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

4. Wáng Tóngzhìde fànwǎn hěn hǎo.

Wáng Tóngzhìde zhèige fànwǎn hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

5. Mǎ Tóngzhìde shūjiàzi hěn hǎo.

Mǎ Tóngzhìde zhèige shūjiàzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

6. Lín Tóngzhìde dītǎn hěn hǎo.

Lín Tóngzhìde zhèige dītǎn hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

7. Lǐ Tóngzhìde yīzi hěn hǎo.

Lǐ Tóngzhìde zhèige yīzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

UNIT 5

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |        |  |  |
|--------|--|--|
| 1. A:  | Qǐng ni gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.            | Please give me two fives.  |
| 2. B:  | Máfan ni, wǒ zhèr yǒu yízhāng shíkuàide.       | Sorry to bother you. I have a ten here.                                  |
| 3. B:  | Qǐng ni gěi wǒ huàn huan.                      | Please change it for me.   |
| 4. C:  | Nǐn yào zěnme huàn?                            | How do you want to change it?  |
| B:     | Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide ba.            | How about giving me two fives, please.                                   |
| 5. *B: | Xièxie.  | Thank you.   |
| C:     | Bú kèqi.                                       | You're welcome.  |
| 6. D:  | Nǐmen shǒu Měijīn ma?                          | Do you accept U.S. currency?   |
| E:     | Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shǒu.                        | I'm sorry, we don't.   |
| 7. D:  | Zài nǎr huàn ne? Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu yínháng?      | Well, where do I change it? Is there a bank here?                        |
| E:     | Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nǎr.                      | There is. The bank is right over there.                                  |
| 8. D:  | Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhèr huàn qián?        | May I ask, is it here that I change money?                               |
| F:     | Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.                        | Yes, you change it here.   |
| 9. F:  | Nǐ yào huàn duōshao?                           | How much do you want to change?  |
| D:     | Wǒ zhèr yǒu yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. | I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.               |
| 10. D: | Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?                  | What is today's exchange rate?   |
| F:     | Yíkuài Měijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì. | One U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency. |

---

\*This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

11. yíge diànshàn	one electric fan
12. yíge diànshì	one television
13. yíge shōuyīnjī	one radio
14. yíge zhōng	one clock
15. yíge shǒubiǎo	one wristwatch

VOCABULARY

bú kèqi	you're welcome
diànshàn	electric fan
diànshì	television
huàn	to change, to exchange
lǚxíng	travel
lǚxíng zhīpiào (yìzhāng)	traveler's check
máfan ni	sorry to bother you
Měijīn	United States currency
páijià	exchange rate
Rénmínbì	People's currency (PRC)
shōu	to accept, to receive
shǒubiǎo	wristwatch
shōuyīnjī	radio
zěnmē	how
zhīpiào (yìzhāng)	a check (e.g., banker's or personal)
zhōng	clock

(introduced on C-2 tape)

Yǒuyí Shāngdiàn	Friendship Department Store (in Běijīng)
-----------------	---

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wūkuàide. Please give me two fives.

Note on No. 1

Liǎngzhāng wūkuàide refers to two 5-dollar BILLS. The marker -de at the end of wūkuàide indicates that the phrase modifies an understood noun. In another context, the noun might be a different one. If the speaker says liǎngge wūkuàide in a store, the phrase might refer to two ITEMS, that is, two items that cost five dollars. In earlier units, similar uses of -de were translated as "ones": dàde, "big ones."

2. B: Máfān ni, wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuàide. Sorry to bother you. I have a ten here.

Notes on No. 2

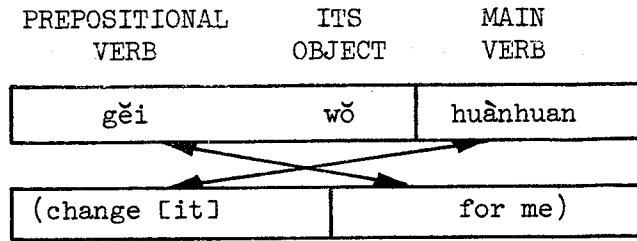
Máfān ni: Máfān is a verb meaning "bother," or "annoy." The expression máfān ni means "I'm bothering you." It is translated in No. 2 as "Sorry to bother you."

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuàide: Word for word, this would be "I-here there-is one-sheet 10-dollar-thing," or, a little more smoothly, "Here where I am, there is a 10-dollar bill."

3. B: Qǐng ni gěi wo huàn huan. Please change it for me.

Notes on No. 3

Gěi wo: In No. 3 the verb gěi is used prepositionally to mean "for." Prepositional verbs and their objects come before the main verb in a sentence. Notice that while gěi wo precedes the main verb in Chinese, "for me" follows the verb in English.



Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nǐde  
nèiběn shū.

Please let me look at that book  
of yours.

Tā gěi mèimei mǎile yíge  
diànshàn.

He bought an electric fan for  
his younger sister.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ xiě nǐde  
dìzhǐ.

Please write your address for me.

Huànhuan: The reduplication of huàn in No. 3 makes the request milder and more polite. (See Unit 3, notes on No. 1.)

4. C: Nín yào zěnmē huàn?  
B: Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng  
wǔkuàide bā.

How do you want to change it?  
How about giving me two fives,  
please.

Note on No. 4

Zěnmē, "how," "in what way": In Chinese, adverbs precede verbs. Notice that the adverb zěnmē is placed immediately before the main verb huàn, while in English "how" begins the sentence.

5. B: Xièxie.  
C: Bú kèqi.

Thank you.  
You're welcome.

Note on No. 5

Bú kèqi is an idiom meaning "don't be polite." It is used like the English "You're welcome." In English, you accept thanks; in Chinese, you modestly decline thanks.

6. D: Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma? Do you accept U.S. currency?  
 E: Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu. I'm sorry, we don't.
7. D: Zài nǎr huàn ne? Zhèr yǒu  
 méiyǒu yínháng?  
 E: Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nǎr. Well, where do I change it?  
 Is there a bank here?  
 There is. The bank is right over  
 there.

Notes on No. 7

The marker ne at the end of Zài nǎr huàn ne? indicates that the question follows from the sentence before it. The marker ne is often used at the end of a question which almost automatically follows the preceding sentence in a conversation: Wǒ hǎo. Nǐ ne? OR Zài nǎr huàn ne? Normally, you do not use a sentence ending with ne to start a new conversation.\*

Yǒu méiyǒu: You have already learned one way to form a yes/no-choice question, with the negative choice tacked onto the end of the sentence. The second question in exchange 7 illustrates a second way: the negative choice comes immediately after the affirmative choice. Both patterns are common. Compare:

Zhèr	yǒu		yínháng	meiyǒu?	(Is there a bank here?)
Zhèr	yǒu	méiyǒu	yínháng?		

8. D: Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài  
 zhèr huàn qián?  
 F: Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn. May I ask, is it here that I change  
 money?  
 Yes, you change it here.

Notes on No. 8

Shì bu shì is used to form a yes/no-choice question about something other than the main verb of a sentence. In this case, the question is

---

\*This use of ne is different from the use of ne to indicate ongoing action or a continuing state: Tā xiànzài nian shu ne. (See BIO, Unit 8, note on No. 3.)

about the phrase zài zhèr. Here is a comparison between the Chinese and a literal English version of the yes/no-choice question:

Shì bu shi	zài zhèr huàn qián?
(Is it or isn't it	here that I change money?)

Notice that the affirmative choice in shì bu shi has a tone, while the negative does not.

The answer to a shì bu shi question starts with shì, for "yes," or bú shi, for "no."

Shì zài zhèr huàn.

It is here that you change it.

Bú shi zài zhèr huàn.

It isn't here that you change it.

In exchange 8, the shì for "yes" is emphasized and so has its tone:

Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.

Yes, it IS here that you change it.

Notice that the place phrase zài zhèr precedes the main verb huàn. In Chinese, the order of phrases is TIME, PLACE, ACTION.

	TIME	PLACE	ACTION	
Wǒ	qùnián	zài Jiāzhōu	niàn shū.	(Last year I studied in California.)
Tā	xiànzài	zài yínháng	huàn qián ne.	(He is changing money at the bank now.)

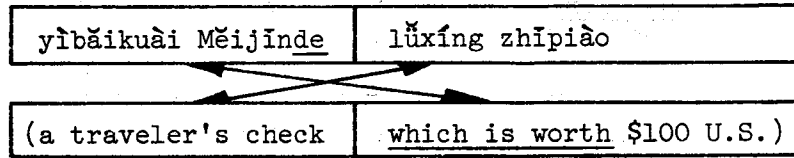
9. F: Nǐ yào huàn duōshao?  
 D: Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìbǎikuài  
 Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

How much do you want to change?  
 I have one hundred U.S. dollars  
 in traveler's checks here.

Note on No. 9

Yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào: In this phrase the traveler's check, lǚxíng zhīpiào, is being described as worth one hundred dollars in U.S. currency, yìbǎikuài Měijīn. The amount of money is made into a descriptive phrase by the addition of the marker of modification -de.





10. D: Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?      What is today's exchange rate?  
F: Yíkuài Měijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì.      One U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency.

Notes on No. 10

Huàn: In the second sentence of exchange 10, the verb huàn is used to equate amounts of money in two different currencies. The verb can be translated fairly literally as "can be exchanged for": "One U.S. dollar can be exchanged for one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency."

Rénmínbì: Rénmín means "people," and bì is the word for "currency."  
Rénmínbì (sometimes abbreviated as RMB) is the official name for PRC currency.

DRILLS

A. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nǐ yào zěnme huàn?<br/>(cue) 5 ones<br/>(How do you want to<br/>change it?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔzhāng yíkuàide.<br/>(Please give me five ones.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nǐ yào zěnme huàn? 2 fives</p>  | <p>Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.</p>  |
| <p>3. Nǐ yào zěnme huàn? 10 tens</p>  | <p>Qǐng ni gěi wo shízhāng shíkuàide.</p>   |
| <p>4. Nǐ yào zěnme huàn? 5 ones</p>   | <p>Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔzhāng yíkuàide.</p>   |
| <p>5. Nǐ yào zěnme huàn? 10 ones</p>  | <p>Qǐng ni gěi wo shízhāng yíkuàide.</p>  |
| <p>6. Nǐ yào zěnme huàn? 5 tens</p>   | <p>Qǐng ni gěi wo wǔzhāng shíkuàide.</p>  |
| <p>7. Nǐ yào zěnme huàn? 2 fives</p>  | <p>Qǐng ni gěi wo liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.</p>  |

B. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?<br/>(cue) Dìyī Gōngsī<br/>(Do you accept U.S.<br/>currency?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Dìyī Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?<br/>(Does the First Company accept<br/>U.S. currency?)</p> |
| <p>2. Dìyī Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?<br/>Jīnrì Gōngsī</p>   | <p>Jīnrì Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?</p>   |
| <p>3. Jīnrì Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?<br/>Yuǎndōng Gōngsī</p>   | <p>Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?</p>  |
| <p>4. Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?<br/>Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn</p>   | <p>Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?</p>   |
| <p>5. Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn<br/>ma? Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn</p>  | <p>Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?</p>   |
| <p>6. Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?<br/>nǐmen zhèli</p>   | <p>Nǐmen zhèli shōu Měijīn ma?</p>  |
| <p>7. Nǐmen zhèli shōu Měijīn ma?</p>  |   |

C. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) nǎr<br>(I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S. currency.) | <u>You</u> : Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kényi huàn ne?<br>(May I ask, where can I change it?) |
| OR Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) yínháng<br>(I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S. currency.)              | Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyou yínháng?<br>(May I ask, is there a bank here?)             |
| 2. Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Rénmínbì.<br>nǎr  | Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kényi huàn ne?   |
| 3. Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Táibì.<br>yínháng   | Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyou yínháng?   |
| 4. Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu lǚxíng zhīpiào.<br>nǎr  | Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kényi huàn ne?   |
| 5. Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu zhīpiào.<br>yínháng   | Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyou yínháng?   |
| 6. Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn zhīpiào.<br>nǎr  | Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kényi huàn ne?   |

D. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhèli huàn qián?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) zhège yínháng<br>(May I ask, is it here that I change money?) | <u>You</u> : Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?<br>(May I ask, is it at this bank that I change money?) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?<br>zhèli nǐmen   | Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài nǐmen zhèli huàn qián?  |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài nǐmen zhèli huàn qián?<br>yínháng zhège   | Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?  |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?<br>Táiwān Yínháng  | Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn qián?   |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn qián?<br>tā nàli  | Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài tā nàli huàn qián?  |

6. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài tā nàli huàn qián? nǐmen zhèli
7. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài nǐmen zhèli huàn qián?

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài nǐmen zhèli huàn qián?

E. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
(cue) 100  
(I have traveler's checks here.)
2. Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
350
3. Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
200
4. Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
70
5. Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
90
6. Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
840
7. Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
540

You: Wǒ zhèr yǒu yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
(I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.)

Wǒ zhèr yǒu sānbǎi wūshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu liǎngbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu qīshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu jiǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu bābǎi sìshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu wǔbǎi sìshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

F. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ zhèr yǒu yīzhāng shíkuàide Rénmínbì.  
(I have one 10-dollar bill of People's currency here.)
2. Wǒ zhèr yǒu yīzhāng wǔkuàide Rénmínbì.
3. Wǒ zhèr yǒu yīzhāng wūshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

You: Wǒ zhèr yǒu yīzhāng shíkuàide Rénmínbì. Qǐng ni gěi wo huàn huan.  
(I have one 10-dollar bill of People's currency here. Please change it for me.)

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yīzhāng wǔkuàide Rénmínbì. Qǐng ni gěi wo huàn huan.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yīzhāng wūshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huàn huan.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng èrshikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.    | Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng èrshikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng<br>ni gěi wo huàn huan.    |
| 5. Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng yìbǎikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.    | Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng yìbǎikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng<br>ni gěi wo huàn huan.    |
| 6. Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng èrshikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. | Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng èrshikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng<br>ni gěi wo huàn huan. |
| 7. Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng wǔshikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. | Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng wǔshikuài<br>Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng<br>ni gěi wo huàn huan. |

G. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā huàn duōshao qián?<br>(cue) want<br>(How much money is he<br>changing?)         | <u>You</u> : Tā yào huàn duōshao qián?<br>(How much money does he want<br>to change?)  |
| OR Tā huàn yìbǎikuài Měijīn.<br>(cue) did<br>(He is changing one hundred<br>U.S. dollars.)             | Tā huànle yìbǎikuài Měijīn.<br>(He changed one hundred U.S.<br>dollars.)               |
| OR Tā huàn yìbǎikuài Měijīn.<br>(cue) has done so far<br>(He is changing one hundred<br>U.S. dollars.) | Tā huànle yìbǎikuài Měijīn le.<br>(He has changed one hundred<br>U.S. dollars so far.) |
| 2. Tā huàn duōshao qián? did   | Tā huànle duōshao qián?  |
| 3. Tā huàn wǔshikuài Měijīn. want  | Tā yào huàn wǔshikuài Měijīn.  |
| 4. Tā huàn sìshikuài Měijīn. did   | Tā huànle sìshikuài Měijīn.  |
| 5. Tā huàn Měijīn. has done so far   | Tā huànle Měijīn le.   |

H. Response Drill

Use liǎng- for all your responses.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā mǎi shénme le?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) shōuyīnjī<br>(What did he buy?) | <u>You</u> : Tā mǎile liǎngge shōuyīnjī.<br>(He bought two radios.) |
| 2. Tā mǎi shénme le? diànshì  | Tā mǎile liǎngge diànshì.   |
| 3. Tā mǎi shénme le? píngguǒ  | Tā mǎile liǎngge píngguǒ.   |
| 4. Tā mǎi shénme le? yīzi   | Tā mǎile liǎngbǎ yīzi.  |
| 5. Tā mǎi shénme le? chábēi   | Tā mǎile liǎngge chábēi.  |
| 6. Tā mǎi shénme le? wǎn  | Tā mǎile liǎngge wǎn.   |
| 7. Tā mǎi shénme le? zhuōzi   | Tā mǎile liǎngzhāng zhuōzi.   |

I. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn<br>zhèngzhixué zài nǐ<br>zhèli ma?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) tā<br>(May I ask, is that<br>political science<br>book of mine over by<br>you?) | <u>You</u> : Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli.<br>(It's not over by me; it's over<br>by him.) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn jīngjixué<br>zài nǐ zhèli ma? tā  | Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli.   |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn Zhōngwén shū<br>zài nǐ nàli ma? Wáng Tàitai   | Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài Wáng Tàitai nàli.  |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn zázhi zài<br>nǐ nàli ma? Lǐ Xiānsheng   | Bú zài tā nàli, zài wǒ zhèli.   |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàfèn Zhōngwén<br>bào zài nǐ zhèli ma? tā   | Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli.   |
| 6. Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàzhāng Táiwān<br>dìtú zài nǐ zhèli ma? tā  | Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài tā nàli.   |
| 7. Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàfèn Yīngwén bào<br>zài nǐ nàli ma? Wǔ Xiǎojiě   | Bú zài wǒ zhèli, zài Wǔ Xiǎojiě nàli.   |

UNIT 6

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyì huàn Měijīn ma?  
B: Duìbuqǐ, bù kéyì.  
May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?  
I'm sorry, that's not possible.
2. A: Lǚxíng zhīpiào ne?  
B: Yě bù kéyì. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.  
How about traveler's checks?  
That's not possible either. You have to change them at the Bank of Taiwan.
3. A: Yínháng shénme shíhòu kāi mén?  
B: Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.  
When does the bank open?  
It opens at nine o'clock.
4. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?  
B: Sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.  
What time does it close?  
It closes at three o'clock.
5. A: Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì huàn ba?  
B: Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn bàn. Hái kéyì huàn.  
What time is it now? I may still change money, I suppose?  
It's half past two now. You may still change money.
6. A: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
C: Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshíbākuài Táibì.  
I want to change some money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.  
Certainly. One U.S. dollar is thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan currency.
7. A: Zhè shì wǔzhāng èrshikuàide lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
C: Qǐng nín děngyíděng. Wǒ jiù lái.  
Here are five 20-dollar traveler's checks.  
Please wait a moment. I'll be right back.
8. A: Wǒ yào diǎn xiǎo piàozi. Zhèzhāng yìbǎikuàide qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn, xíng bu xíng?  
I would like some small bills. Please change this 100-dollar bill for me. Would that be all right?

C: Xíng. Gěi nín jiǔzhāng  
shíkuàide, liǎngzhāng  
wǔkuàide.

All right. I'll give you nine tens  
and two fives.

9. A: Máfān nǐ le.

Sorry to have bothered you.

C: Méi shenme.

It's nothing.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

10. zǎochen (zǎochén)	early morning
11. zǎoshang (zǎoshàng)	morning
12. shàngwǔ (shàngwu)	forenoon, morning
13. zhōngwǔ (zhōngwu)	noon
14. xiàwǔ (xiàwu)	afternoon
15. wǎnshang (wǎnshàng)	evening
16. yèli	night
17. bàn'yè	midnight
18. jiàn	to meet
19. māmāhūhū	so-so, fair



## VOCABULARY

bàn	half
bànyè	midnight
děi	must
děng	to wait
děngyiděng	to wait a moment
-diǎn	(counter for hours on the clock)
gěi	for
guān	to close
guān mén	to close (for the business day); to close down, to go out of business
jiàn	to meet
jǐdiǎn zhōng	what hour, what time
jiù	immediately (with reference to time)
kāi	to open
kāi mén	to open (for the business day); to open for business
kéyǐ	may, can, to be permitted
mámahūhū	so-so, fair
méi shenme	it's nothing
mén(r)	door
piàozi (yìzhāng)	bills (currency)
shàngwǔ (shàngwǔ)	forenoon, morning
Táibì	Taiwan currency (NT\$)
wǎnshang (wǎnshàng)	evening
xiàwǔ (xiàwǔ)	afternoon
xíng	to be all right
yèli	night
zǎochen (zǎochén)	early morning
zǎoshang (zǎoshàng)	morning
zhōng	o'clock
zhōngwǔ (zhōngwǔ)	noon

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

kāishǐ	to start, to begin
yǒude shíhou	sometimes

(introduced in Communication Game)

-táng	(counter for class periods)
-------	-----------------------------

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn ma? May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?  
B: Duìbuqǐ, bù kéyi. I'm sorry, that's not possible.

### Notes on No. 1

Kéyi is the auxiliary verb "may," "can." It is often used, as here, to say what is permitted by the rules of a particular organization. It is often best translated by the English word "can" rather than by "may."

Like all auxiliary verbs, kéyi is a state verb and therefore can be made negative only with bù.

Nǐmen zhèli is a place phrase acting as topic. The first sentence in exchange 1 could be translated more literally as "As for your place here, may one change American currency?"

2. A: Lǚxíng zhīpiào ne? How about traveler's checks?  
B: Yě bù kéyi. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn. That's not possible either. You have to change them at the Bank of Taiwan.

### Note on No. 2

Děi, "must," "have to": Unlike many other auxiliary verbs, děi cannot be made negative.\* Also, it is not used in short answers or short questions. For the question form of děi, it is wrong to say děi bu děi; instead, use shì bu shì děi, "is it (true) that...must" (or use yòng bu yong, "is it necessary to...").

Děi is a colloquial northern Chinese word which is not necessarily used or understood in all parts of China. In particular, děi is heard infrequently in Taiwan. When speaking with Chinese who do not use děi, you may substitute an expression with a similar meaning. In many sentences, you can substitute yào, "should," "must"; in other sentences, you can use bìxū, "must."

---

\*To say "must not," use qiānwàn bié, "by no means must": Nǐ qiānwàn bié qù, "You must not go." To say "need not," use bú bǐ or bú yòng: Nǐ bú bǐ qù, "You need not (don't have to) go," OR Nǐ bú yòng lái, "You need not (don't have to) come."

3. A: Yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén? When does the bank open?  
B: Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén. It opens at nine o'clock.
4. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén? What time does it close?  
B: Sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén. It closes at three o'clock.

Notes on Nos. 3-4

Kāi mén, guān mén: The words kāi and guān mean "to open" and "to close." Mén means "door." In referring to business hours, kāi and guān are always followed by mén. The only exception is that mén may be omitted in a sentence if the word was included earlier in the conversation, as in the following example:

Yínháng sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén. The bank closes at three o'clock.

Xiànzài yǐjīng guān le. It's already closed now.

The phrases kāi mén and guān mén may also mean "to be open" and "to be closed." That is, they may refer to states as well as to actions of opening and closing.\*

Yínháng hái kāi mén ba? The bank is still open, I suppose?

Jiǔdiǎn zhōng: The word for "clock" is zhōng, and diǎn (literally, "a dot") is the counter for hours on the clock. In time expressions, zhōng corresponds to "o'clock." As is the case for "o'clock" in English, zhōng may be omitted.

Jiǔdiǎn (zhōng). It's nine (o'clock).

Jǐdiǎn zhōng: Notice that questions about clock time are formed with jǐ-, not with dùoshào, since the answers involve small numbers.

5. A: Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì huàn ba? What time is it now? I may still change money, I suppose?  
B: Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn bàn. Hái kéyì huàn. It's half past two now. You may still change money.

---

\*The phrase guān mén can also refer to going out of business.

Notes on No. 5

Ba is used in exchange 5 to mark a question expressing the speaker's supposition about the answer. Here is another example:

Yínháng hái kāi mén ba?                      The bank is still open, I suppose?  
OR The bank is still open, isn't it?

Bàn: Liǎngdiǎn bàn may be translated as "half past two," or "two-thirty." Notice that, literally, the expression is "two dots half," with the number bàn after the counter diǎn. In Chinese, "two-thirty" may be said with or without zhōng:

liǎngdiǎn bàn                      OR                      liǎngdiǎn bàn zhōng

6. A: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.  
Zhè shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde  
lǚxíng zhīpiào.                      I want to change some money into  
Taiwan currency. Here are one  
hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's  
checks.
- C: Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn  
sānshíbākuài Táibì.                      Certainly. One U.S. dollar is  
thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan  
currency.

Note on No. 6

Huàn Táibì: The verb huàn really means "to exchange," that is, to replace one thing with another. Huàn sets up an equivalence between the two items being exchanged but does not indicate the direction of the exchange (i.e., which item the speaker starts with and which he ends up with). In the middle of someone's stay in Taiwan, we assume that the phrase huàn Táibì refers to changing some money INTO Taiwan currency. At the end of a stay in Taiwan, we would guess that the phrase refers to changing money FROM Taiwan currency. Only the context indicates whether to translate huàn as "change into" or as "change from."\*

7. A: Zhè shì wǔzhāng èrshíkùaide  
lǚxíng zhīpiào.                      Here are five 20-dollar traveler's  
checks.
- C: Qǐng nín děngyíděng. Wǒ  
jiù lái.                      Please wait a moment. I'll be  
right back.

---

\*The English verb "rent" is similar: The sentence "I want to rent an apartment" could mean either "I have an apartment to rent TO someone" or "I want to find an apartment to rent FROM someone."

Notes on No. 7

Děngyīdēng is a reduplicated verb with a toneless yī, "one," inserted. Notice that here the second dēng keeps its tone. Compare this to the type of reduplication you saw in Unit 3: kànkàn, kànyìkàn. As you learned previously, reduplication has the effect of making the verb more tentative.

Jiù is used in the last sentence of exchange 7 to indicate how soon the action will happen: "immediately," "right away."

Lái: The last sentence in the exchange is said as the teller turns away from the counter to go to a desk behind it. In this context, the verb lái can be understood as "come back."

8. A: Wǒ yào diǎn xiǎo piàozi.  
Zhè zhāng yībǎikuàide  
qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan,  
xíng bu xíng?  
C: Xíng. Gěi nǐn jiǔzhāng  
shìkùàide, liǎngzhāng  
wǔkùàide
- I would like some small bills.  
Please change this 100-dollar  
bill for me. Would that be  
all right?  
All right. I'll give you nine tens  
and two fives.

9. A: Mǎfan nǐ le.  
C: Méi shenme.
- Sorry to have bothered you.  
It's nothing.

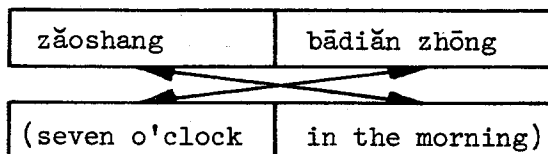
Note on No. 9

Méi shenme: A literal translation of this expression is "There isn't anything," presumably meaning "What I did wasn't anything."

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 10. zǎochen (zǎochén)   | early morning     |
| 11. zǎoshang (zǎoshàng) | morning           |
| 12. shàngwǔ (shàngwǔ)   | forenoon, morning |
| 13. zhōngwǔ (zhōngwǔ)   | noon              |
| 14. xiàwǔ (xiàwǔ)       | afternoon         |
| 15. wǎnshang (wǎnshàng) | evening           |
| 16. yèli                | night             |
| 17. bànyè               | midnight          |
| 18. jiàn                | to meet           |
| 19. māmāhūhū            | so-so, fair       |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

In Chinese, clock time is usually preceded by a time-of-day, or part-of-the-day, word: zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng, "seven o'clock in the morning." Notice that the word order of elements in the Chinese phrase is the opposite of the English translation:



Here are more examples of clock-time phrases:

zǎoshang bādiǎn zhōng	8:00 a.m.
shàngwǔ shídiǎn zhōng	10:00 a.m.
xiàwǔ sìdiǎn bàn zhōng	4:30 p.m.
wǎnshang qīdiǎn bàn zhōng	7:30 p.m.

Remember that zhōng may be left off. In short answers, however, the full form is usually used.

TIME-OF-DAY WORDS

TRANSLATIONS

zǎochen	early morning
zǎoshang	morning [ <u>general term</u> ] (full daylight until near noon)
shàngwǔ	forenoon (normal working hours until noon)
zhōngwǔ	noon
xiàwǔ	afternoon (noon until the end of the business day)
wǎnshang	evening (from sunset)
bànyè	midnight
yèli	night (until sunrise)

The hours of zǎoshang and shàngwǔ overlap. Although zǎoshang can refer to the whole morning, shàngwǔ is often used instead when talking about the morning hours of the normal business day (9 a.m. [or perhaps 8 a.m.] until noon). Even in a business context, times before 8 a.m. are always referred to as zǎoshang.

Xiàwǔ ends and wǎnshang begins at the end of the business day, when a person returns home.

Wǎnshang in the city may last until as late as midnight, while in the country yèli may begin at 10 p.m.

Yèli sounds a bit old-fashioned to some speakers, who prefer to use wǎnshang for both "evening" and "night." Wǎnshang is also used to mean "during the night" (i.e., during sleeping hours).

Jiàn, literally, "to see," means "to meet (with someone)," "to see (someone)."

Zài jiàn. Good-bye. (See you again.)

Míngtiān jiàn. See you tomorrow.

Wǒmen kéyǐ jiǔdiǎn zhōng jiàn. We can meet at nine o'clock.

Mámahūhū, "so-so," "fair," "not so bad," "not so good": Literally, this word means "horse-horse-tiger-tiger."

Jīntiān zěnmeyàng? How is it today?

Mámahūhū. So-so.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli<br/>kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?<br/>(cue) Yuánshān<br/>Dàfàndiàn<br/>(May I ask, can U.S.<br/>currency be changed<br/>here?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Qǐngwèn, Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn<br/>kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?<br/>(May I ask, can U.S. currency<br/>be changed at the Yuánshān<br/>Hotel?)</p> |
| <p>2. Qǐngwèn, Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn kéyi<br/>huàn Měijīn ma? tāmen nàli</p>  | <p>Qǐngwèn, tāmen nàli kéyi huàn Měijīn<br/>ma?</p>  |
| <p>3. Qǐngwèn, tāmen nàli kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma? Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn</p>  | <p>Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma?</p>  |
| <p>4. Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kéyi<br/>huàn Měijīn ma? zhège<br/>yínháng</p>   | <p>Qǐngwèn, zhège yínháng kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma?</p>   |
| <p>5. Qǐngwèn, zhège yínháng kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma? nàge fàndiàn</p>   | <p>Qǐngwèn, nàge fàndiàn kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma?</p>  |
| <p>6. Qǐngwèn, nàge fàndiàn kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma? nǐmen zhèli</p>   | <p>Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn Měijīn<br/>ma?</p>   |
| <p>7. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma? Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn</p>   | <p>Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn<br/>Měijīn ma?</p>  |

B. Transformation and Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nín děi zài Táiwān<br/>Yínháng huàn.<br/>(You must change it at<br/>the Bank of Taiwan.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Hǎo, wǒ zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.<br/>(Fine, I'll change it at the<br/>Bank of Taiwan.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nín děi zài Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn<br/>huàn.</p>   | <p>Hǎo, wǒ zài Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn huàn.</p>   |
| <p>3. Nín děi zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn<br/>huàn.</p>   | <p>Hǎo, wǒ zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.</p>   |
| <p>4. Nín děi zài Měiguó Yínháng huàn.</p>   | <p>Hǎo, wǒ zài Měiguó Yínháng huàn.</p>   |
| <p>5. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.</p>   | <p>Hǎo, wǒ zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.</p>   |



- |                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 6. Nín děi zài zhège yínháng huàn.    | Hǎo, wǒ zài zhège yínháng huàn.    |
| 7. Nín děi zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn. | Hǎo, wǒ zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn. |

C. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐngwèn, yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén?<br>(May I ask, when does the bank open?) | <u>You</u> : Qǐngwèn, yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?<br>(May I ask, at what time does the bank open?) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī shénme shíhou guān mén?   | Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?   |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shénme shíhou kāi mén?   | Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?   |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī shénme shíhou kāi mén?   | Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?   |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén?   | Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?   |
| 6. Qǐngwèn, yóuzhèngjú shénme shíhou kāi mén?  | Qǐngwèn, yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?  |
| 7. Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī shénme shíhou guān mén?  | Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?  |

D. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nín yào huàn qián ma? (cue) yínháng<br>(Do you want to change money?) | <u>You</u> : Duì le. Qǐngwèn, yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?<br>(Right. May I ask, at what time does the bank open?) |
| 2. Nín yào mǎi dōngxī ma? Jīnrì Gōngsī  | Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?   |
| 3. Nín yào huàn qián ma? Táiwān Yínháng   | Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?   |
| 4. Nín yào mǎi yǔsǎn ma? Dìyī Gōngsī  | Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?  |

5. Nín yào mǎi pánziwǎn ma?  
Yuǎndōng Gōngsī

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī  
jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

6. Tā yào mǎi diànshì ma? nàge  
gōngsī

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, nàge gōngsī jǐdiǎn  
zhōng kāi mén?

7. Nín yào mǎi shōuyīnjī ma?  
Jīnrì Gōngsī

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī  
jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

E. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Hái kéyì huàn ma?  
(May I still change it?)

You: Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì  
huàn ma?  
(What time is it now? May I  
still change it?)

2. Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mǎi  
ma?

3. Hái kéyì huàn ma?

Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì huàn  
ma?

4. Hái kéyì mài ma?

Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mài  
ma?

5. Hái kéyì huàn ma?

Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì huàn  
ma?

6. Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mǎi  
ma?

7. Hái kéyì mài ma?

Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mài  
ma?

F. Expansion Drill

In your responses, assume that closing time is seven o'clock.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Xiànzài wǔdiǎn bàn.<br>(It's five-thirty.) | <u>You</u> : Xiànzài wǔdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.<br>(It's five-thirty; they haven't closed yet.) |
| OR Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn.<br>(It's seven-thirty)                  | Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn, yǐjīng guān mén le.<br>(It's seven-thirty; they have already closed.)          |
| 2. Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng.                                      | Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng, hái méi guān mén.   |
| 3. Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn.   | Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn, yǐjīng guān mén le.  |
| 4. Xiànzài sìdiǎn bàn.   | Xiànzài sìdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.  |
| 5. Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng.                                       | Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng, yǐjīng guān mén le.  |
| 6. Xiànzài liùdiǎn bàn.  | Xiànzài liùdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.   |

G. Expansion Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.<br>Táibì.<br>(cue) 100<br>(I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì shì yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.<br>(I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.) |
| 2. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. 20   | Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.   |
| 3. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. 40   | Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì sìshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.   |
| 4. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. 30   | Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì sānshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  |
| 5. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. 50   | Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.   |

6. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. 70 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì qīshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
7. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. 80 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì bāshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

H. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.  
(cue) 100  
(I want to change a little money into People's currency.)
- OR Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.  
(cue) páijià  
(I want to change a little money into People's currency.)
- You: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.  
Zhèi shì yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
(I want to change a little money into People's currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.)
- Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.  
Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?  
(I want to change a little money into People's currency. What is today's exchange rate?)
2. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. 20 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
3. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. páijià Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?
4. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. 60 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhèi shì liùshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
5. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. páijià Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?
6. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. 80. Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhèi shì bāshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

I. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèi shì wǔzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.<br>(cue) 20<br>(Here are five traveler's checks.) | <u>You</u> : Zhèi shì wǔzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.<br>(Here are five 20-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.) |
| 2. Nèi shì liǎngzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 10   | Nèi shì liǎngzhāng shíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.   |
| 3. Zhèi shì yìzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 100  | Zhèi shì yìzhāng yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.   |
| 4. Zhèi shì sānzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 20  | Zhèi shì sānzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  |
| 5. Nèi shì sìzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 50  | Nèi shì sìzhāng wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  |
| 6. Nèi shì liùzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 10   | Nèi shì liùzhāng shíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.   |
| 7. Zhèi shì sānzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào. 20  | Zhèi shì sānzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  |

J. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.<br>(I want some small bills.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.<br>(I want some small bills. Please change this for me.) |
| 2. Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.                              | Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.   |
| 3. Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.  | Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.   |
| 4. Zhèi shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.                              | Zhèi shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.   |
| 5. Zhèi shì wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.                              | Zhèi shì wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.   |
| 6. Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.  | Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.   |

7. Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

K. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. (cue) 20  
(Please change this for me.)

You: Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
(Please change this for me. Here are twenty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.)

OR Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. (cue) xiǎo piàozi  
(Please change this for me.)

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.  
(Please change this for me. I want some small bills.)

OR Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. (cue) páijià  
(Please change this for me.)

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?  
(Please change this for me. What is today's exchange rate?)

2. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. 100

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Zhèi shì yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

3. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. xiǎo piàozi

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.

4. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. páijià

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?

5. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. 50

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Zhèi shì wùshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

L. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?  
(cue) shàngwǔ  
(At what time does the bank open?)

You: Yínháng shàngwǔ jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?  
(At what time in the morning does the bank open?)

2. Yóuzhèngjù bādiǎn bàn kāi mén. zǎoshang

Yóuzhèngjù zǎoshang bādiǎn bàn kāi mén.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?<br>xiàwǔ           | Yínháng xiàwǔ jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?              |
| 4. Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng<br>kāi mén? zǎoshang | Yuǎndōng Gōngsī zǎoshang jǐdiǎn zhōng<br>kāi mén? |
| 5. Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān<br>mén? wǎnshang    | Dìyī Gōngsī wǎnshang jǐdiǎn zhōng<br>guān mén?    |
| 6. Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi<br>mén? zǎoshang  | Táiwān Yínháng zǎoshang jǐdiǎn zhōng<br>kāi mén?  |
| 7. Táiwān Yínháng sāndiǎn zhōng<br>guān mén? xiàwǔ   | Táiwān Yínháng xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng<br>guān mén.   |

M. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng<br>kāi mén?<br>(cue) 9 a.m.<br>(At what time does the<br>bank open?) | <u>You</u> : Yínháng shàngwǔ jiǔdiǎn zhōng<br>kāi mén.<br>(The bank opens at nine o'clock<br>in the morning.) |
| 2. Yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng guān<br>mén? 5 p.m.  | Yóuzhèngjú xiàwǔ wǔdiǎn zhōng guān<br>mén.  |
| 3. Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng<br>guān mén? 10 p.m.  | Yuǎndōng Gōngsī wǎnshang shídiǎn<br>zhōng guān mén.   |
| 4. Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi<br>mén? 8 a.m.   | Jīnrì Gōngsī zǎoshang bādiǎn zhōng<br>kāi mén.  |
| 5. Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi<br>mén? 9 a.m.   | Táiwān Yínháng zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn zhōng<br>kāi mén.   |
| 6. Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān<br>mén? 10 p.m.  | Dìyī Gōngsī wǎnshang shídiǎn zhōng<br>guān mén.   |
| 7. Nàge yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān<br>mén? 3 p.m.  | Nàge yínháng xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng<br>guān mén.   |

## MODULE 4: DIRECTIONS

The Directions Module (DIR) will provide you with the skills needed to ask for and understand directions to any place indoors or outdoors, to give simple directions, to understand and give addresses, and to describe relative locations.

Before starting the module, you must take and pass the MON Criterion Test.

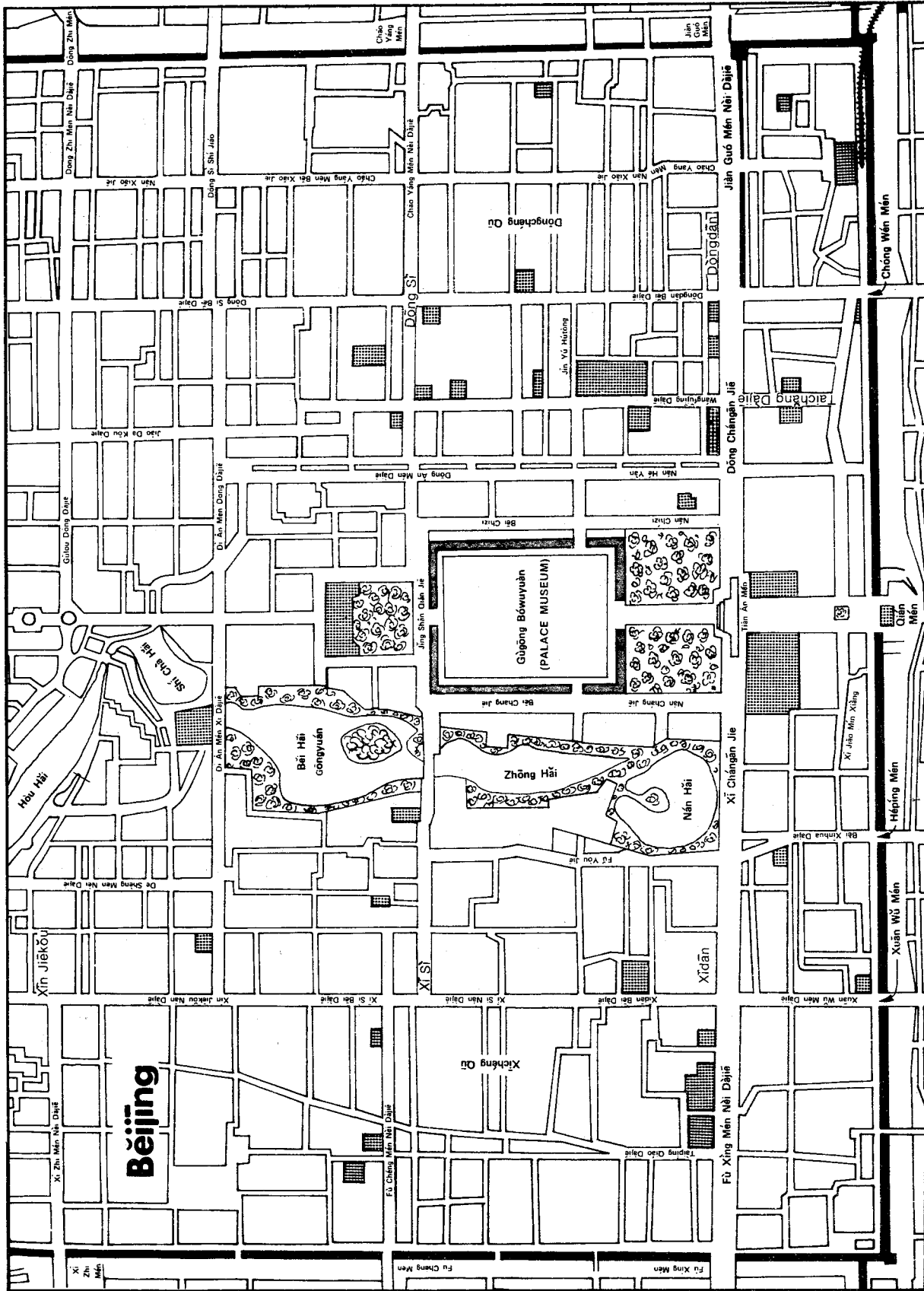
The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, MON, and associated resource modules may also be included.

### OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

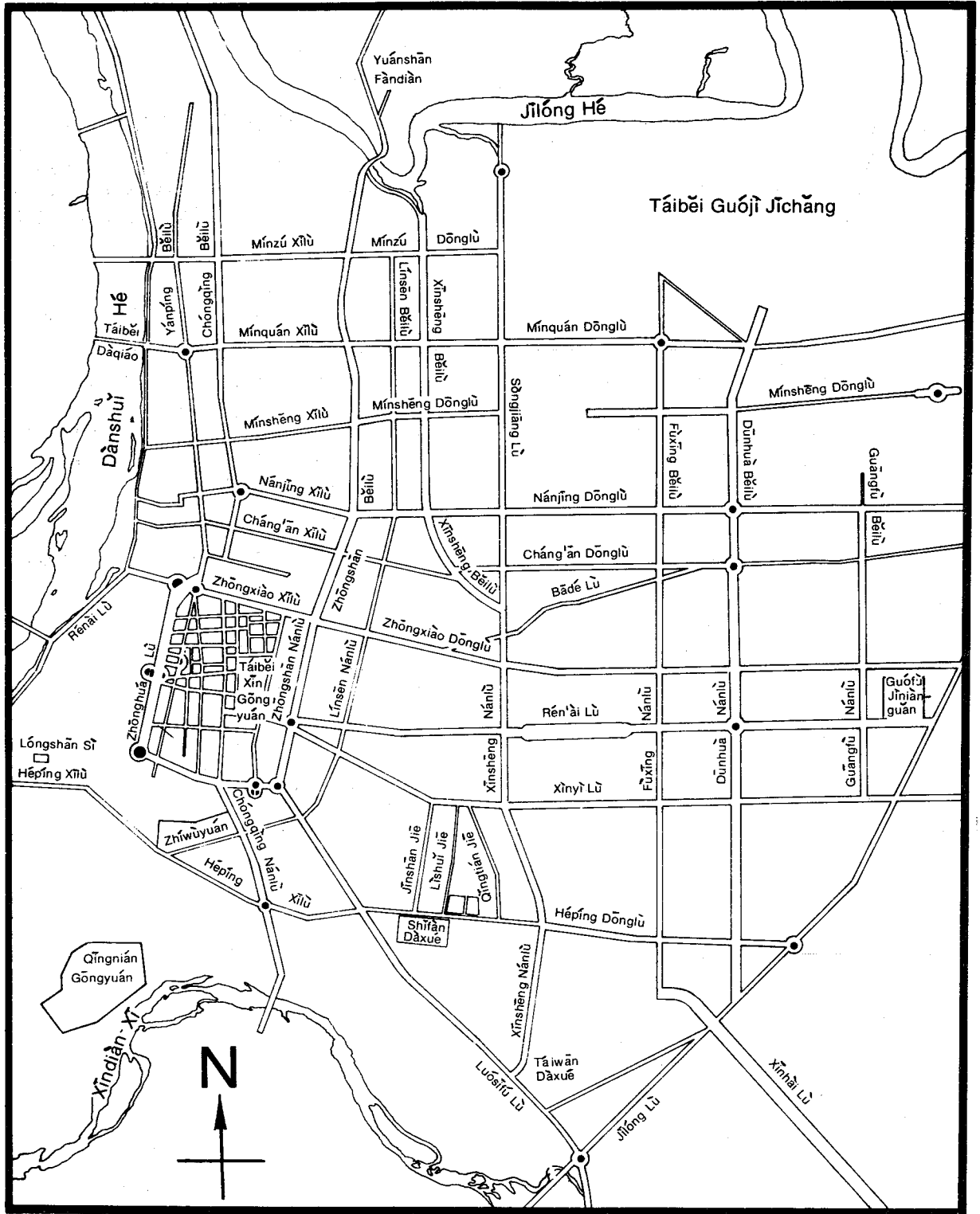
1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the DIR Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the DIR Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
3. Ask for directions to a location in a city, to a place in a building, or to a specific address.
4. Comprehend directions well enough to trace the route on a city map or a floor plan.
5. Demonstrate understanding of directions by restating at least part of them step by step.
6. Distinguish between Běijīng and Taipei expressions for directions by matching expressions to the cities in which they would be used.
7. Direct someone (using single-sentence directions) to various places in a building by describing a route marked on a floor plan.





NOTE: The heavy dark lines show where the city walls were formerly located.

# Taipei



## UNIT 1 TARGET LIST

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?<br>Bù zhīdào.   | Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?<br>No, I don't.   |
| 2. Dào kāfēitīng qù, zěnmē zǒu?<br>Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Dào le lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le. | How do I get to the coffeehouse?<br>From here you go to the left. When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there. |
| 3. Cóng zhèli dào yínháng qù, wǒ xiān wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?<br>Bú shì, cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu.       | To get from here to the bank, I first go to the right. Is that correct?<br>No, from here you go straight.  |
| 4. Ránhòu, dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?<br>Duì le.<br>Hǎo. Wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie.        | After that, when I have reached the intersection, then I go to the left. Is that correct?<br>That's correct.<br>Good. I've got it now. Thank you.          |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 5. fànguǎnzi | restaurant (Taipei)   |
| 6. fànguǎnr  | restaurant (Běijīng)  |
| 7. shāngdiàn | store, shop (Taipei)  |
| 8. pùzi      | store, shop (Běijīng) |
| 9. xuéxiào   | school                |
| 10. fángzi   | house                 |
| 11. xiàng    | towards               |

## UNIT 2 TARGET LIST

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Nǐ zhīdao Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?<br>Shì.   | Do you know whether the Dōngdān Movie Theater is in this area?<br>Yes.   |
| 2. Cóng zhèr dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn qù, zěnmē zǒu?<br>Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu.<br>Dào le dìèrge lùkǒu, běibianr shì Dōngdān Cāishichǎng.<br>Nánbianr shì Dōngdān Gōngyuán.<br>Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōngdān Cāishichǎngde xībianr. | How do I get from here to the Dōngdān Movie Theater?<br>When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.<br>When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market.<br>On the south side is Dōngdān Park.<br>The movie theater is just on the west side of the Dōngdān Market. |
| 3. Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, wǒ xiān qù kàn yige péngyou.  | Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.  |
| 4. Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyǒu mǎi tángde?<br>Yǒu. Yǒu yige xiǎomàibù. Zài nàibianr.  | Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?<br>Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.   |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 5. wàibianr (wàibian) | outside   |
| 6. yǐhòu              | after   |
| 7. yòubianr (yòubian) | right side  |
| 8. zuǒbianr (zuǒbian) | left side   |
| 9. xiǎoxué            | elementary school   |
| 10. zhōngxué          | middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school) |

## UNIT 3 TARGET LIST

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Nǐ chūqu a!<br>Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jībēn shū.  | Oh, you're going out!<br>I thought I would go out to buy a few books.   |
| 2. Lǎojià, nǎr yǒu mǎi shūde?<br>Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà.                 | Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?<br>There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard that is very large. |
| 3. Lǎojià, Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.                                    | Excuse me. Is the New China Bookstore far from here?<br>It's not far; it's very close.  |
| 4. Zěnmē qù? Zǒuzhe qù kēyī ma?<br>Zǒuzhe qù kēyī.   | How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?<br>It's possible to get there by walking.                                |
| 5. Zǒu duó yuǎn?<br>Zǒu bù yuǎn, lùdōngde dìyīge dàlóu jiù shì Xīnhuá Shūdiàn.                     | How far do I go?<br>Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore.    |
| 6. Dāo Xīnhuá Shūdiàn qù, zěnmē zǒu?<br>Cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē. | How do I get to the New China Bookstore?<br>You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard.      |
| 7. Lǎojià, nèige dàlóu shì Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma?<br>Shì.  | Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore?<br>Yes.  |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |           |                              |
|-----------|------------------------------|
| 8. zhuǎn  | to turn                      |
| 9. chūlai | to come out                  |
| 10. lùxī  | the west side of the street  |
| 11. lùběi | the north side of the street |
| 12. lùnán | the south side of the street |

DIR

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 13. bǎihuò gōngsī                          | department store                         |
| 14. Bǎihuò Dàlóu                           | (name of a department store in Běijīng)  |
| 15. shàngbianr (shàngbian)                 | above; the top, the upper part           |
| 16. xiàbianr (xiàbian)                     | below, under; the bottom, the lower part |
| 17. dǐxia                                  | underneath; the underneath               |
| 18. zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiānr)<br>(zhōngjiān) | the middle, the space in between         |
| 19. pángbiānr (pángbiān)                   | beside, next to, alongside of; the side  |

## UNIT 4 TARGET LIST

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài nǎli?<br>Zuò diàntī dào èrlóu.<br>Xiàle diàntī, jiù kànjian le.                  | May I ask, where is the dining room?<br>Take the elevator to the second floor.<br>When you have gotten off the elevator, then you'll see it.                               |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli yǒu meiyǒu lǐfǎde dìfāng?<br>Yǒu. Xià lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.                      | May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?<br>Yes. Go downstairs, and it's (just) on the left.   |
| 3. Jǐlóu mài dìtú?<br>Èrlóu.<br>Zěnme zǒu?<br>Wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde. | On what floor are maps sold?<br>The second floor.<br>How do I get there (go)?<br>Go straight to the back. Go up the stairs, and the map department is (just) on the right. |
| 4. Xǐshǒujiān zài nǎli?<br>Zài nǎli. Wǎng lǐ zǒu, jiù kànjian le.  | Where is the washroom?<br>It's over there. Go all the way in, and then you'll see it.  |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| 5. qián              | front, ahead                                   |
| 6. duìmiàn (duìmiàn) | the side facing; across from, opposite, facing |
| 7. zhèbian (zhèbian) | this way, this side                            |
| 8. nàbian (nàbian)   | that way, that side                            |
| 9. lóutī             | staircase, stairway, stairs                    |
| 10. zǒuláng          | corridor                                       |
| 11. cèsuǒ            | toilet, rest room                              |
| 12. jìn              | to enter                                       |
| 13. -tou             | end (occurs in place words)                    |
| 14. -mian(r)         | surface (occurs in place words)                |

## UNIT 5 TARGET LIST

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Duìbuqǐ.<br>Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?   | Excuse me.<br>What can I do for you?  |
| 2. Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?<br>Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn,<br>Wúshìsìxiāng.  | What place are you looking for?<br>I am looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng<br>East Road, Section 1.   |
| 3. Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.<br>Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì<br>Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.<br>Dào le Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài<br>wèn biéren ba. | You go that way.<br>Cross three streets, and that's<br>Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.<br>After you have gotten to Section 1,<br>please ask someone else. |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài nǎli?<br>Nǐ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.<br>Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shì<br>Wǔnòng.                         | May I ask, where is Alley 5?<br>You walk (straight) ahead a little<br>farther.<br>The first intersection on the right<br>is Alley 5.                    |
| 5. Qǐngwèn zhètiáo lù shì shénme<br>lù?<br>Zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù.<br>Òu, wǒ zǒucuo le.  | May I ask, what road is this?<br>This is Zhōngshān North Road.<br>Oh, I went the wrong way.   |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 6. hùtong (hútòng)     | a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng) |
| 7. mén (ménr)          | gate, door                        |
| 8. ménkǒu (ménkǒur)    | doorway, gateway, entrance        |
| 9. qiáo                | bridge                            |
| 10. tiānqiáo           | pedestrian overpass               |
| 11. dìxià xíng rén dào | pedestrian underground walkway    |



UNIT 1

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1. A: Nǐ dào nǎli qù? Where are you going?  
B: Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù. I'm going to a coffeehouse.
2. B: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Coffeehouse?  
A: Bù zhīdao. No, I don't.
3. A: Dào nǎli qù, zěnmé zǒu? How do I get there?
4. C: Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. From here you go to the left.
5. C: Dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.
6. C: Dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le. When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.
7. A: Wǒ xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì? First I go to the left. Is that correct?  
C: Duì le. That's correct.
8. A: Ránhòu ne? And after that?  
C: Ránhòu, dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. After that, when you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.  
A: Hǎo, wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie. Good, I've got it now. Thank you.
9. A: Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào yínháng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì? May I ask, to get from here to the bank you go to the right. Is that correct?  
D: Bú shì, cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu. No, from here you go straight.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

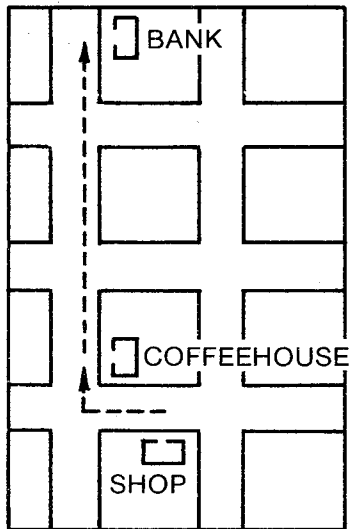
- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 10. fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr) | restaurant            |
| 11. shāngdiàn            | store, shop (Taipei)  |
| 12. pùzi                 | store, shop (Běijīng) |
| 13. xuéxiào              | school                |
| 14. fángzi               | house                 |
| 15. xiàng                | towards               |



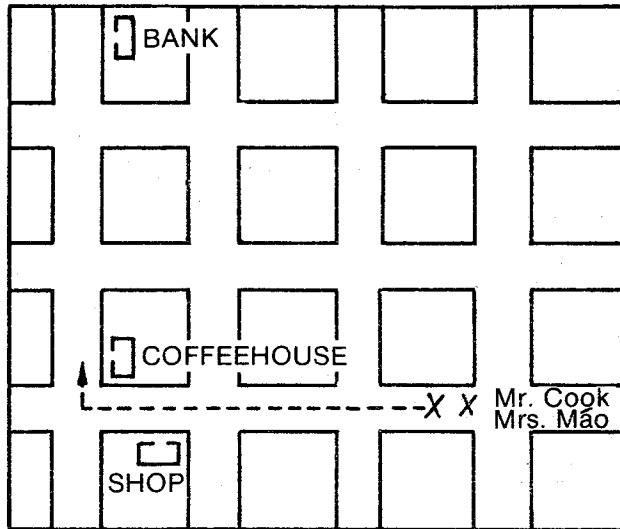
Snack stands in Taipei

MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE

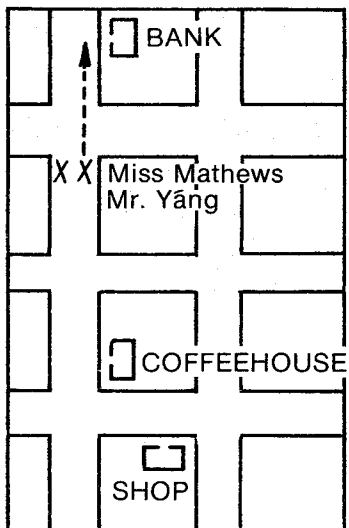
DISPLAY I



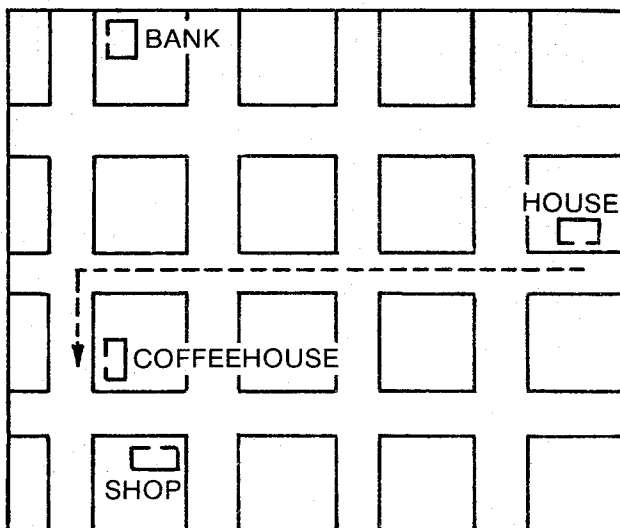
DISPLAY III



DISPLAY II



DISPLAY IV



## VOCABULARY

cóng	from
dào	to, towards
duì	to be correct
fànguǎnr	restaurant (Běijīng)
fànguǎnzi	restaurant (Taipei)
fángzi	house
Huáměi Kāfēitīng	Huáměi Coffeehouse (Taipei)
jiù	then
kāfēitīng	coffeehouse
lùkǒu(r)	intersection
pùzi	store, shop (Běijīng)
qù	to go
ránhòu	afterwards, after that
shāngdiàn	store, shop (Taipei)
wàng (wǎng)	to, towards
xiān	first; ahead of time
xiàng	towards
xuéxiào	school
yìzhí	straight
yòu	right (direction)
zài	then (in commands)
zhīdao	to know
zǒu	to go
zuǒ	left (direction)

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

fāngbian	to be convenient
hái bù yíding	not yet certain
jīngguo	by way of, via
kāi xué	school starts (literally, "open school")

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Nǐ dào nǎli qù?                      Where are you going?  
 B: Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù.                  I'm going to a coffeehouse.

Notes on No. 1

Qù is used as the verb "to go" when there is a destination implied or stated, as in "going to the country" and "going somewhere." The verb zǒu, "to leave," is used for sentences such as "I'm going (leaving) now," Wǒ xiànzài zǒu le. Wǒ xiànzài qù le means "I'm going there now," implying the destination "there."

Wǒ dào Shànghǎi qù.                  I am going to Shànghǎi.

Tā yě qù.                                  He is going there too.

Because qù is an action verb, it is made negative with bù except when you are talking about completed action. Here are some examples of qù used in various aspects:

Tā bú qù.                                  He is not going.

Tā zuótiān méi qù.                      He did not go yesterday. (COMPLETED ACTION)

Tā xiànzài bú qù le.                  Now he is not going. (Originally, he was going to go. NEW SITUATION)

Tā méi qùguo.                          He has never gone there.

Dào...qù: In this exchange dào is not the full verb meaning "to arrive," but is the prepositional verb "to." The prepositional verb phrase beginning with dào indicates the destination. Notice that prepositional verb phrases in Chinese precede the main verb, while in English they usually follow the verb.

Tā zài Xiānggǎng zhùle sāntiān.                  She stayed in Hong Kong three days.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.              Please change it for me.

Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù.                  I'm going to a coffeehouse.

A prepositional verb is always followed by a noun or noun phrase that is its object.

Kāfēitīng, "coffeehouse": Some people say that the coffeehouse was a European concept first adopted by the Japanese and then transplanted to Taiwan. Coffeehouses in Taiwan are comfortable, leisurely places where a person can linger over a cup of something and talk with a friend for hours, to a background of recorded light music. Some coffeehouses have become quite cosmopolitan, offering a dozen kinds of coffee in addition to a variety of fruit drinks and soft drinks. Sometimes there may also be a short menu including items such as fried rice, noodles, sandwiches, hamburgers, and ice cream.

2. B: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao                      Do you know of the Huáměi  
                    Huáměi Kāfēitīng?                      Coffeehouse?  
A: Bù zhīdào.                                      No, I don't.

Notes on No. 2

The verb zhīdao means "to know" or "to know of." Another verb, rènshi, also translates into English as "to know," but in the sense of "to be acquainted with," "to recognize."

Notice that in the affirmative the verb zhīdao ends in a Neutral tone, while in the negative it ends in a Falling tone (bù zhīdào).

The verb zhīdao is a state verb. State verbs describe qualities or conditions (dà, "to be large"; guì, "to be expensive"). Knowing (zhīdao), wanting (xiǎng or yào), and liking (xǐhuan) are all considered states. As a state verb, zhīdao can only be made negative with bù (never méi). Zhīdao can be used with the marker le for new situations.

- Tā yǐqián bù zhīdào zěnmē dào      He didn't know how to get here  
zhèr lái, xiànzài zhīdao le.              before, but now he knows.
- Tā qùnián hái bù zhīdào tā              Last year he didn't know that he  
yǐhòu yào dào Zhōngguó qù.              would later be going to China.

Huáměi: Huá means "glorious." It is one of the syllables often used to refer to China. The syllable měi, "beautiful," is used in compounds to refer to America (as in Měiguó).

3. A: Dào nàli qù, zěnmē zǒu? How do I get there?

Notes on No. 3

Earlier, you learned the verb zǒu as "to leave." In the sentence above, zǒu means "to go" in the sense of "to go by way of," "to take a route." Zǒu also means "to walk."

Tā hái méi zǒu, hái zài zhèr kàn bào ne. He hasn't left yet. He is still here reading the paper.

Wǒmen zǒu zhèige mén yě kéyi. We can also go through this door.

Háizi hái bú huì zǒu. The baby can't yet walk.

Dào nàli qù, zěnmē zǒu? This sentence consists of a topic, dào nàli qù, "to go to that place," followed by a question about that topic, zěnmē zǒu? "how do I go?" Both the topic and the question have the structure of full sentences:

Dào	nàli	qù,	zěnmē	zǒu?
(To	there	go,	how	go?)

Translated as "to go," qù focuses on the destination, while zǒu focuses on the route taken to get there.

4. C: Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. From here you go to the left.

Notes on No. 4

Cóng, "from": Unlike the other prepositional verbs you have learned, cóng is only rarely used as a full verb in modern Chinese. Most frequently, it is used prepositionally.

Wàng, "to," "towards": The prepositional verbs wàng and dào may both be translated as "to." Wàng, however, means simply "towards" or "in the direction of," while dào implies eventual arrival at a destination. Wàng may also be pronounced wàng.

Notice that two prepositional verb phrases occur before the main verb.

PREPOSITIONAL VERB AND NOUN	PREPOSITIONAL VERB AND NOUN	MAIN VERB
Cóng zhèli	wàng zuǒ	zǒu.

5. C: Dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.      When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.

Notes on No. 5

Lùkǒu, "intersection": Literally, this word means "road opening."

Completion -le in the sentence above marks completed action but not past tense. It shows the completion of one action in the sentence in relation to another but does not indicate whether that action is past, present, or future. In the English translation, the time relationship between the two actions is indicated by the word "when": "When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right." In a more formal style, the sentence could be translated as "Having reached the intersection, you go to the right."

The adverb zài is used for "then" in commands and suggestions. It usually indicates the next step in a suggested sequence of actions, as in "First you go left, and then, when you have reached the intersection, you go right."

6. C: Dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le.      When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.

Notes on No. 6

Jiù: You have learned that jiù can mean "right," "precisely," "just," referring to where something is, as in Jiù zài zhèli, "They're right here."



You also know that it can mean "immediately," "right away," as in Wǒ jiù lái, "I'll be right back." A third meaning was introduced: "only," a synonym of zhǐ, as in Jiù yǒu wǒ fùqin, mǔqin, "There's only my father and mother." Now you see jiù used to mean "then." It stresses the immediacy of one thing happening after another: "and then right away."

You have learned two words that may be translated as "then": zài and jiù. However, the two words are not used interchangeably. Jiù is used to stress how soon one event happened after another. Zài is used to stress how two actions are to be sequenced in time.

The marker le in jiù dào le is combined le.

7. A: Wǒ xiān wǎng zuǒ zǒu,  
duì bu duì?  
C: Duì le.

First I go to the left.  
Is that correct?  
That's correct.

#### Notes on No. 7

Xiān, "first," is an adverb. It must therefore come after the subject and before the verb, as in Nǐ xiān zǒu, "You go first." (In English "first" may be placed either before the subject or after the verb, as in "First you go" and "You go first." But in Chinese xiān must be placed between the subject and the verb.)

Dìyī also means "first," but dìyī and xiān are not interchangeable. Dìyī modifies nouns, whereas xiān modifies verbs. Dìyī refers to the first in a sequence, in other words, the "number one" something-or-other. Xiān refers to doing something first, before doing a second thing.

Duì bu duì: This phrase is used when you expect your listener to agree with you but want to make sure.

8. A: Ránhòu ne?                           And after that?  
C: Ránhòu, dào le lùkǒu, zài           After that, when you have reached  
    wàng yòu zǒu.                           the intersection, then you go to  
  the right.  
A: Hǎo, wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie.       Good, I've got it now. Thank you.

Notes on No. 8

Ránhòu, "(and) after that": When giving directions or describing a contemplated series of steps, ránhòu is often followed by zài.

Wǒ yào dào Xiānggǎng qù           I'm going to go to Hong Kong for  
    sāntiān, ránhòu zài qù           three days, and then go to  
    Shànghǎi.                                  Shànghǎi.

Zhīdao le means "I know now" in the sense of "Before, I didn't know how to get there, but now I know." (The expression is translated into more idiomatic English as "I've got it now.") The state verb zhīdao plus new-situation le indicate a change from not knowing to knowing. Here is another example of zhīdao and new-situation le:

Wǒ cóngqián bù zhīdào tā           Before, I didn't know where he  
    zhù zai nǎlǐ, xiànzài           lived, but now I know.  
    zhīdao le.

9. A: Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào        May I ask, to get from here to the  
    yínháng qù, wàng yòu zǒu,        bank you go to the right. Is  
    duì bu duì?                                  that correct?  
D: Bú shì, cóng zhèlǐ yìzhí zǒu.   No, from here you go straight.

Note on No. 9

Bú shì: Notice that the question in exchange 9 is not answered with bú duì. The expression bú duì is as rude in Chinese as "you're wrong" is in English (except when a teacher is correcting a student).

10. fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr)	restaurant
11. shāngdiàn	store, shop (Taipei)
12. pùzi	store, shop (Běijīng)
13. xuéxiào	school
14. fángzi	house
15. xiàng	towards

#### Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Fànguǎnzi, "restaurant": Fàndiàn refers to either a restaurant or a hotel. Fànguǎnzi means "restaurant." The usual Běijīng version of this word is fànguǎnr (pronounced as if written fànguǎr). The ending -r is used frequently in Běijīng but in Taiwan is rarely used by Taiwanese speakers of Standard Chinese.

Adding -r to a syllable usually causes the pronunciation of the base syllable to change. It will be easier and more practical for you to examine each -r word as it is introduced in the course of study.

You have already learned the word yìdiǎnr, which is actually pronounced yìdiǎr. From the examples yìdiǎnr and fànguǎnr you can see that when -r is added to a syllable that ends with n, the /n/ sound disappears completely.

Although adding -r causes pronunciation changes in most syllables, these changes are not represented in the Pinyin system of romanization. Pinyin spelling rules state that the ending -r should simply be tacked on at the end of a syllable, regardless of whether or not the pronunciation of the base syllable is changed by this addition.

Xiàng, "towards": The prepositional verb xiàng may be used in most of the same ways that wàng is used. You will probably hear wàng (wǎng) more frequently than the literary-sounding xiàng.

Dào le lùkǒu, xiàng zuǒ zǒu.      When you get to the intersection,  
go to the left.

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā qù.<br>(cue) xuéxiào<br>(He is going.) | <u>You</u> : Tā dào xuéxiào qù.<br>(He is going to school.) |
| 2. Wáng Tóngzhì qù. Jiānádà                                   | Wáng Tóngzhì dào Jiānádà qù.                                |
| 3. Tā lái. zhèli  | Tā dào zhèli lái.   |
| 4. Lǐ Xiānsheng qù. xuéxiào                                   | Lǐ Xiānsheng dào xuéxiào qù.                                |
| 5. Chén Nǚshì lái. Běijīng                                    | Chén Nǚshì dào Běijīng qù.                                  |
| 6. Gāo Tóngzhì qù. yóuzhèngjú                                 | Gāo Tóngzhì dào yóuzhèngjú qù.                              |
| 7. Sūn Fūren qù. nǎli   | Sūn Fūren dào nǎli qù?                                      |

B. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā dào nǎli qù?<br>(cue) nàge fānguǎnzi<br>(Where is he going?) | <u>You</u> : Tā dào nàge fānguǎnzi qù.<br>(He is going to that restaurant.) |
| 2. Chén Xiānsheng dào nǎli qù?<br>Táiwān Yínháng                                    | Chén Xiānsheng dào Táiwān Yínháng qù.                                       |
| 3. Jiāng Tàitai dào nǎli qù?<br>xuéxiào   | Jiāng Tàitai dào xuéxiào qù.  |
| 4. Zhāng Xiǎojiě dào nǎli qù?<br>nàge fānguǎnzi                                     | Zhāng Xiǎojiě dào nàge fānguǎnzi qù.  |
| 5. Gāo Xiānsheng dào nǎli qù?<br>wǔguānchù  | Gāo Xiānsheng dào wǔguānchù qù.   |
| 6. Liú Xiānsheng dào nǎli qù?<br>Huáměi Kāfēitīng                                   | Liú Xiānsheng dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng<br>qù.                                   |
| 7. Lín Nǚshì dào nǎli qù?<br>Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn                                       | Lín Nǚshì dào Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn qù.  |

C. Transformation Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn ma?<br>(Do you know of that store?) | <u>You</u> : Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn?<br>(Do you know of that store or not?) |
| 2. Nǐ zhīdao nèige xuéxiào ma?  | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige xuéxiào?   |
| 3. Tā zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng ma?   | Tā zhīdao bu zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng?  |
| 4. Lín Xiānsheng zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn ma?                                       | Lín Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn?  |
| 5. Wáng Tàitai zhīdao zhège fānguǎnzi ma?   | Wáng Tàitai zhīdao bu zhīdao zhège fānguǎnzi?  |
| 6. Yáng Xiǎojiě zhīdao Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?                                     | Yáng Xiǎojiě zhīdao bu zhīdao Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn?  |
| 7. Zhào Xiānsheng zhīdao Jīnrì Gōngsī ma?   | Zhào Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhīdao Jīnrì Gōngsī?  |

D. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?<br>Huáměi Kāfēitīng?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) yes<br>(Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?) | <u>You</u> : Zhīdao, Huáměi Kāfēitīng zài wǒmen nàr.<br>(Yes, the Huáměi Coffeehouse is over there by us.) |
| OR Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) no<br>(Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?)  | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdào.<br>(I'm sorry, I don't know [it].)  |
| 2. Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Dìyī Gōngsī?<br>no  | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdào.   |
| 3. Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao wǔguānchù?<br>yes   | Zhīdao, wǔguānchù zài wǒmen nàr.   |
| 4. Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Táiwān Dàxué? no  | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdào.   |

5. Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Měiguó  
Xīnwénchù? yes
6. Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao nàge  
fànguǎnzi? no

Zhīdao, Měiguó Xīnwénchù zài wǒmen  
nàr.

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdao.

E. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Dào nàli qù.  
(Go there.)

You: Qǐngwèn, dào nàli qù, zěnme  
zǒu?  
(May I ask, how do I get there?)

2. Dào fànguǎnzi qù.

Qǐngwèn, dào fànguǎnzi qù, zěnme  
zǒu?

3. Dào yóuzhèngjú qù.

Qǐngwèn, dào yóuzhèngjú qù, zěnme  
zǒu?

4. Dào shāngdiàn qù.

Qǐngwèn, dào shāngdiàn qù, zěnme  
zǒu?

5. Dào Táiwān Dàxué qù.

Qǐngwèn, dào Táiwān Dàxué qù, zěnme  
zǒu?

6. Dào Měiguó Xīnwénchù qù.

Qǐngwèn, dào Měiguó Xīnwénchù qù,  
zěnme zǒu?

7. Dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù.

Qǐngwèn, dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù,  
zěnme zǒu?

F. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ zhīdao dào Huáměi<br>Kāfēitīng qù zěnmē<br>zǒu ma?<br>(Do you know how to get<br>to the Huáměi Coffee-<br>house?) | <u>You</u> : Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào Huáměi<br>Kāfēitīng qù zěnmē zǒu?<br>(Do you know how to get to the<br>Huáměi Coffeehouse or not?) |
| 2. Nǐ zhīdao dào Táiwān Yínháng qù<br>zěnmē zǒu ma?  | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào Táiwān<br>Yínháng qù zěnmē zǒu?   |
| 3. Nǐ zhīdao dào nàgē fànguǎnzi qù<br>zěnmē zǒu ma?  | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào nàgē<br>fànguǎnzi qù zěnmē zǒu?   |
| 4. Nǐ zhīdao dào nèigē shāngdiàn<br>qù zěnmē zǒu ma?   | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào nèigē<br>shāngdiàn qù zěnmē zǒu?  |
| 5. Nǐ zhīdao dào nàgē xuéxiào qù<br>zěnmē zǒu ma?  | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào nàgē xuéxiào<br>qù zěnmē zǒu?   |
| 6. Nǐ zhīdao dào kāfēitīng qù zěnmē<br>zǒu ma?   | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào kāfēitīng<br>qù zěnmē zǒu?  |
| 7. Nǐ zhīdao dào wǔguānchù qù<br>zěnmē zǒu ma?   | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào wǔguānchù<br>qù zěnmē zǒu?  |

G. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài<br>wàng yòu zǒu.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) lùkǒu<br>(First go to the left;<br>then go to the right.) | <u>You</u> : Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dào le lùkǒu<br>zài wàng yòu zǒu.<br>(First go to the left; when<br>you get to the corner, go<br>to the right.) |
| 2. Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ<br>zǒu. Dūnhuà Lù  | Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, dào le Dūnhuà Lù<br>zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.  |
| 3. Xiān yìzhí zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ<br>zǒu. Zhōngshān Běilù   | Xiān yìzhí zǒu, dào le Zhōngshān<br>Běilù zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.   |
| 4. Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu<br>zǒu. dìèrge lùkǒu   | Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dào le dìèrge<br>lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu.   |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 5. Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu. dìsāngelùkǒu | Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, dào le dìsāngelùkǒu zài wàng zuǒ zǒu. |
| 6. Xiān yìzhí zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. Zhōnghuá Lù     | Xiān yìzhí zǒu, dào le Zhōnghuá Lù zài wàng yòu zǒu.     |
| 7. Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu. Rénàilù      | Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dào le Rénàilù zài wàng yòu zǒu.      |

H. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?<br>(cue) nàli<br>(You go straight from here. Is that correct?) | <u>You</u> : Cóng zhèli dào nàli qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?<br>(To get from here to there you go straight. Is that correct?) |
| 2. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì? nǐ jiā   | Cóng zhèli dào nǐ jiā qù, wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  |
| 3. Cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì? fāngǎnzǐ  | Cóng zhèli dào fāngǎnzǐ qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?   |
| 4. Cóng zhèli wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì? kāfēitīng  | Cóng zhèli dào kāfēitīng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?   |
| 5. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì? yóuzhèngjú   | Cóng zhèli dào yóuzhèngjú qù, wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  |
| 6. Cóng zhèli yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì? wǔguānchù   | Cóng zhèli dào wǔguānchù qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  |
| 7. Cóng zhèli wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì? xuéxiào  | Cóng zhèli dào xuéxiào qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?   |



I. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi  
Kāfēitīng.  
(cue) yǒu  
(I know of the Huáměi  
Coffeehouse.)

You: Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Huáměi  
Kāfēitīng qù wǎng yǒu zǒu,  
duì bu duì?  
(May I ask, you go to the right  
to get to the Huáměi Coffee-  
house. Is that correct?)

2. Wǒ zhīdao nàge fānguǎnzi.  
zuǒ

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge  
fānguǎnzi qù wǎng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu  
duì?

3. Wǒ zhīdao nàge yóuzhèngjú.  
yǒu

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge  
yóuzhèngjú qù wǎng yǒu zǒu, duì  
bu duì?

4. Wǒ zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng.  
zuǒ

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Táiwān  
Yínháng qù wǎng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu  
duì?

5. Wǒ zhīdao wǔguānchù.  
yìzhí

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào wǔguānchù  
qù yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

6. Wǒ zhīdao Měiguó xuéxiào.  
zuǒ

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Měiguó  
xuéxiào qù wǎng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu  
duì?

7. Wǒ zhīdao nàge shāngdiàn.  
yìzhí

Qǐngwèn. cóng zhèli dào nàge  
shāngdiàn qù yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

J. Response Drill

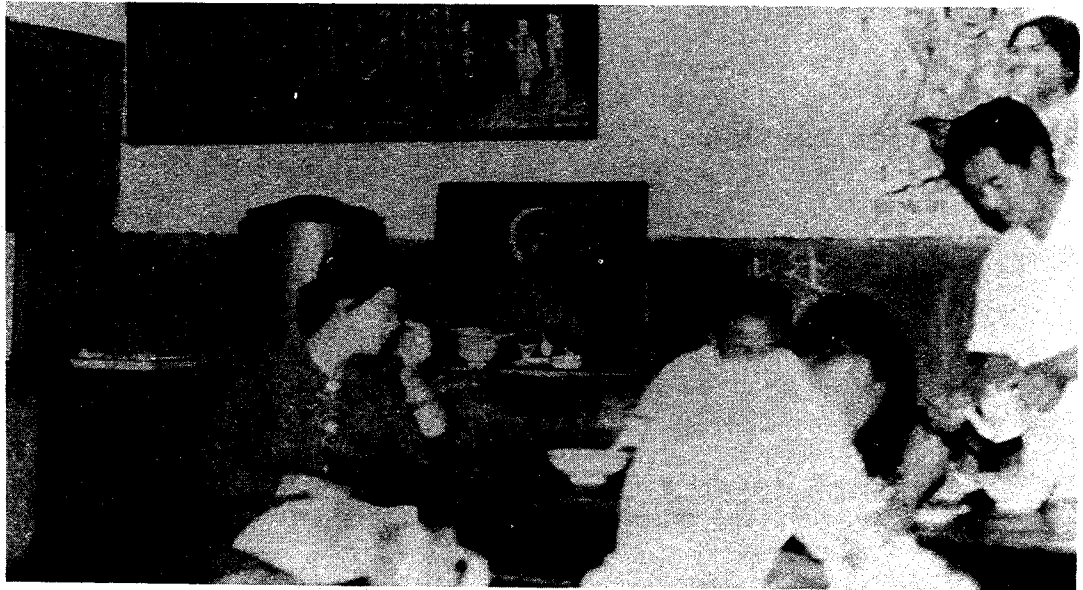
1. Speaker: Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi  
Kāfēitīng.  
(cue) zěnmě zǒu  
(I know of the Huáměi  
Coffeehouse.)

You: Qǐngwèn, dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng  
qù zěnmě zǒu?  
(May I ask, how do I get to the  
Huáměi Coffeehouse?)

OR Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi  
Kāfēitīng.  
(cue) yǒu  
(I know of the Huáměi  
Coffeehouse.)

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Huáměi  
Kāfēitīng qù, wǎng yǒu zǒu,  
duì bu duì?  
(May I ask, I go to the right  
from here to get to the Huáměi  
Coffeehouse. Is that correct?)

2. Wǒ zhīdao nàge xuéxiào.  
zěnme zǒu Qǐngwèn, dào nàge xuéxiào qù zěnme zǒu?
3. Wǒ zhīdao nàge shāngdiàn.  
zuǒ Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge shāngdiàn wǎng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?
4. Wǒ zhīdao Táiwan Yínháng.  
yòu Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào Táiwan Yínháng qù, wǎng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?
5. Wǒ zhīdao wǔguānchù.  
zěnme zǒu Qǐngwèn, dào wǔguānchù qù zěnme zǒu?
6. Wǒ zhīdao nàge fànguǎnzi.  
zuǒ Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèli dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù wǎng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?



Interior of a luncheon stand off the beaten path in Shànghǎi

## UNIT 2

## REFERENCE LIST

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A: Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì<br>bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?   | Is the Dōngdān Movie Theater in this<br>area?   |
| B: Shì. Zài zhèr fùjìn.  | Yes. It's in this area.   |
| 2. A: Nǐ zhīdao diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn<br>yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?  | Do you know whether there is a bank<br>in the vicinity of the theater?  |
| B: Yǒu. Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn<br>yǒu (yige) yínháng.  | Yes. There is a bank in the vicinity<br>of the movie theater.   |
| 3. A: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao yínháng<br>shénme shíhou guān mén?   | Do you know at what time the bank<br>closes?  |
| 4. A: Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme<br>zǒu?  | How do I get there from here?   |
| B: Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng<br>dōng zǒu.  | When you have gone out of the hotel,<br>walk to the east.   |
| 5. B: Dào le dìèrge lùkǒu,<br>běibianr shì Dōngdān<br>Càishichǎng. Nánbianr<br>shì Dōngdān Gōngyuán. | When you have reached the second<br>intersection, on the north side<br>is the Dōngdān Market. On the<br>south side is Dōngdān Park. |
| 6. B: Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài<br>Dōngdān Càishichǎngde<br>xībianr.                                      | The movie theater is just on the<br>west side of the Dōngdān Market.  |
| 7.* A: Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn<br>wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?   | When I have gone out of the hotel,<br>I walk to the east. Is that<br>correct?   |
| B: Duì le.   | That's correct.   |
| 8.* A: Hǎo, běibianr shì Dōngdān<br>Càishichǎng. Nánbianr ne?  | Okay, on the north side is the<br>Dōngdān Market. How about on the<br>south side?   |
| B: Nánbianr shì Dōngdān<br>Gōngyuán.   | On the south side is Dōngdān Park.  |
| 9.* A: Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài<br>càishichǎngde xībianr shì<br>bu shì?                                  | The movie theater is just on the<br>west side of the market, is that<br>it?   |
| B: Shì.  | Yes.  |

---

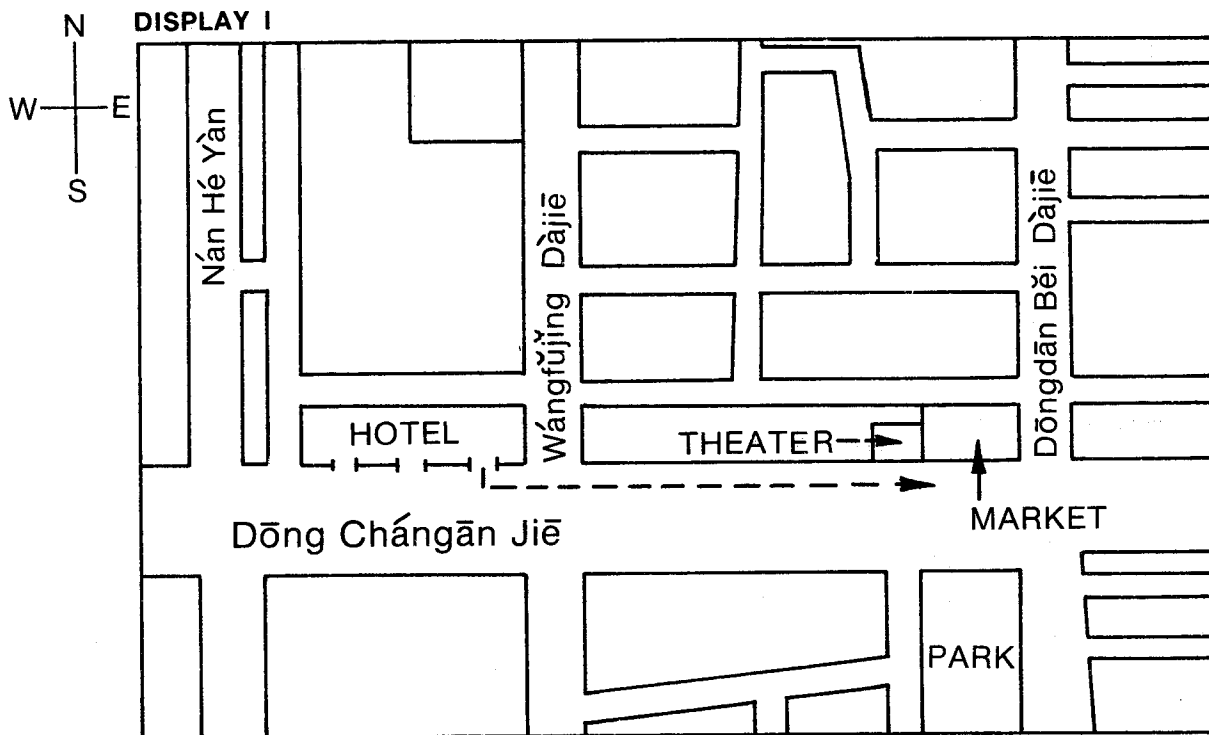
\*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

10. A: Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián wǒ  
xiān qù kàn yíge péngyou. Before I go to see the movie, I am  
first going to visit a friend.
11. A: Fāndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyǒu  
mài tángde? Is there a place to buy candy in the  
hotel?
- B: Yǒu. Yǒu yíge xiǎomàibù.  
Zài nèibianr. Yes. There's a variety shop. It's  
over there.

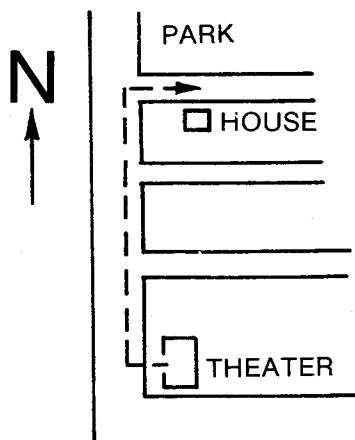
ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

12. wàibianr (wàibian) outside
13. yǐhòu after
14. yòubianr (yòubian) right side
15. zuǒbianr (zuǒbian) left side
16. xiǎoxué elementary school
17. zhōngxué middle school (the equivalent of  
junior and senior high school)

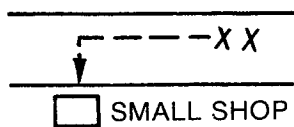
MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE



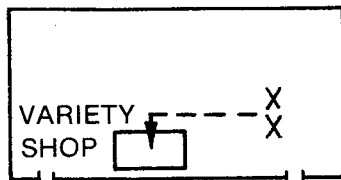
**DISPLAY II**



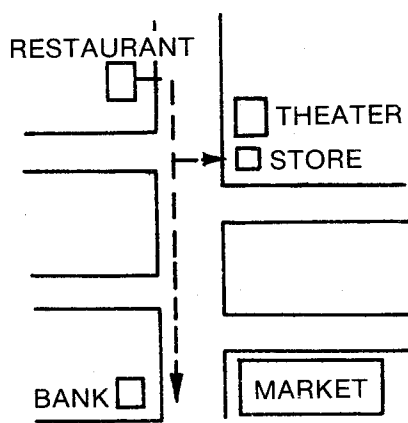
**DISPLAY III**



**DISPLAY IV**



**DISPLAY V**

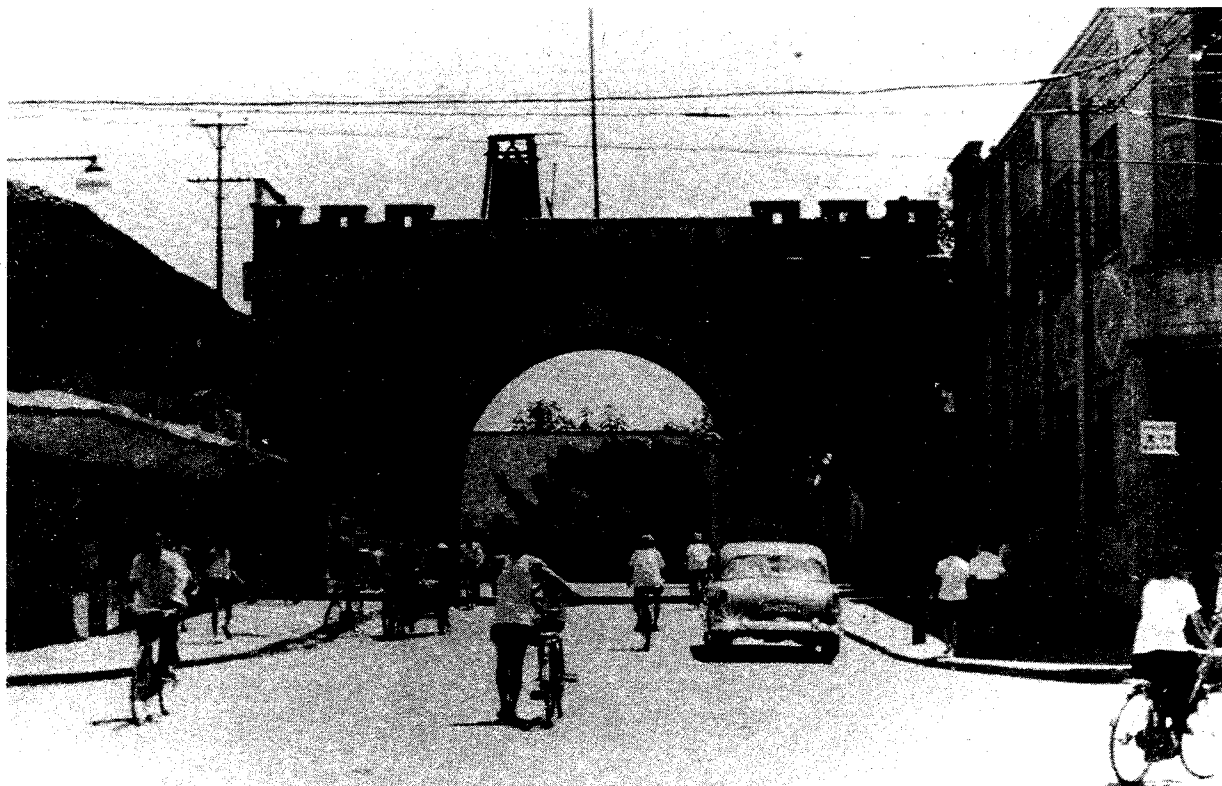


## VOCABULARY

běi	north
běibian(r)	north side
-bianr (-bian)	side, edge (used in place words)
càishichǎng	market
chū	to go out, to exit
diànyǐng(r)	movie, film
diànyǐngyuàn	movie theater
dōng	east
dōngbian(r)	east side
Dōngdān	(a neighborhood in Běijīng)
fùjìn	area, vicinity
gōngyuán	park
lǐ	inside, in
lǐbianr (lǐbian)	inside
nán	south
nánbian(r)	south side
táng	candy, sugar
wàibianr (wàibian)	outside
Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē	Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard (Běijīng)
xī	west
xiǎomàibù	variety shop
xiǎoxué	elementary school
xībian(r)	west side
yǐhòu	after
yǐqián	before
yòubianr (yòubian)	right side
zhōngxué	middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)
zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)	left side

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

bànshìchù	office
gòu	to be enough
guòle lùkǒur	having passed the intersection
nà	well, then
rè	to be hot
zǒuzou	to take a walk
zuìhǎo	it would be best that



Old city gate at Sūzhōu

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn? Is the Dōngdān Movie Theater in this area?  
 B: Shì. Zài zhèr fùjìn. Yes. It's in this area.

Notes on No. 1

Dōngdān is the name of a district in Běijīng to the east and south of the Palace Museum (Gùgōng Bówuyuàn), at the intersection of Dōng Chángān Jiē and Dōngdān Běi Dàjiē. (See map of Běijīng preceding the Target Lists.)

Literally, diànyǐngyuàn means "electric-shadow hall."

Zhèr fùjìn has the structure of a possessive phrase:

zhèr	(-de)	fùjìn
(here	's	vicinity)

(The marker -de is often omitted in phrases of relative location.)

2. A: Nǐ zhīdao diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng? Do you know whether there is a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?  
 B: Yǒu. Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu (yige) yínháng. Yes. There is a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater.

Note on No. 2

Nǐ zhīdao...yǒu meiyǒu yínháng? could also be translated as "Do you know if there's a bank...?" When you want to ask "whether/if" in Chinese, use a yes/no-choice question.



Wǒ bù zhīdào	tā lái bu lái.
(I don't know	whether/if he's coming.)

Notice that in English the beginning of the first sentence in exchange 2 is in question form: "Do you know...?" But the Chinese is in statement form: Nǐ zhīdào.... To be perfectly logical, the Chinese would use either the question form nǐ zhīdào bu zhīdào... or nǐ zhīdào...ma? But if these forms were used, the sentence would sound awkward, or even ungrammatical, to many speakers.

3. A: Nǐ zhīdào bu zhīdào yínháng shénme shíhòu guān mén? Do you know at what time the bank closes?

Note on No. 3

Nǐ zhīdào bu zhīdào: To ask "Do you know...?" in a question-word question, nǐ zhīdào bu zhīdào and nǐ zhīdào...ma? are preferred. Nǐ zhīdào may also occur, especially in long or complex questions.

Nǐ	zhīdào	bu zhīdào	tā zài nǎr?
(You	know	or not	he is where?)

"Do you know where he is?"

Nǐ	zhīdào	tā zài nǎr	ma?
(You	know	he is where?)	

"Do you know where he is?"

4. A: Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnme zōu? How do I get there from here?  
 B: Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zōu. When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.

Notes on No. 4

Chū, "to go out," "to exit": This verb is usually not used alone, but is followed by an object (chū ménr, "go out the door") or used in compound verbs such as chūqu, "to go out." (Compound verbs are introduced in the next unit.) To say that you are going out without specifying the place, you may use Wǒ zōu le, "I'm leaving."

Zhèige: In the second sentence in exchange 4, zhèige is unstressed. It is translated as "the," not as "this." In Chinese, unstressed zhèige and nèige are used more frequently than "this" and "that" are used in English. It is often better to translate zhèige or nèige as "the." (Remember, however, that "the" is not always expressed by a word in Chinese, as in Yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén? "What time does the bank close?")

5. B: Dào le dièrge lùkǒur, běibianr shi Dōngdān Càishichāng. When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market. On the Nánbianr shi Dōngdān Gōngyuán. south side is Dōngdān Park.

Notes on No. 5

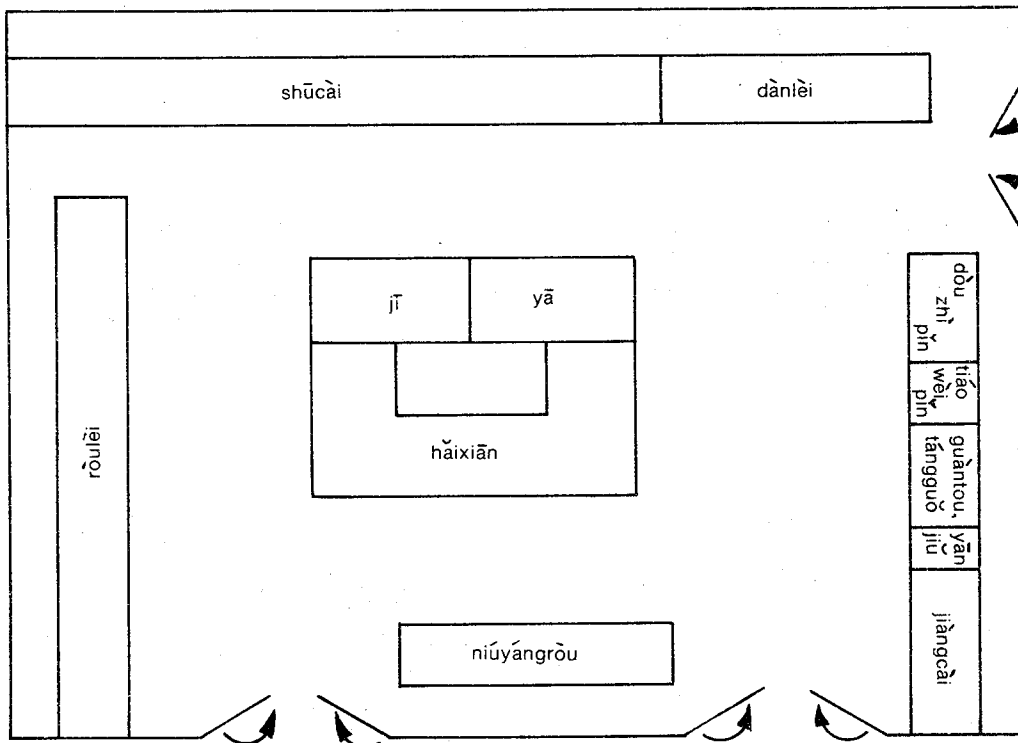
The element -bianr (-bian) means "side." When it is added to a direction word, the word becomes a place name. For instance, běibianr is a noun and names a place, as in Diànyǐngyuán zài nèige fàndiàn běibianr, "The movie theater is on the north side of that hotel." Běi, on the other hand, names a direction, and is the form usually used with wàng, "towards": Nǐ wàng běi zōu, "You go to the north." The other direction words (dōng, nán, xī, zuǒ, and yòu) may also be used as the name of a place (in combination with -bianr) and as the name of a direction. Remember that the ending -bianr is pronounced as if it were written -biar. (See Unit 1, Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary.)

Běibianr, nánbianr: These location words are nouns (acting as topics) in Chinese. They are translated into English as prepositional phrases (acting as adverbs).

Gōngyuán literally means "public garden." (Notice the difference in tone between yuán, "garden," and yuàn, "hall," as in diànyǐngyuàn, "movie hall.")

Càishichǎng: Below, in the diagram of a large càishichǎng in Běijīng, you will find the following sections: shūcài (vegetables), dànlei (eggs, including chicken eggs, duck eggs, salted duck eggs, and "thousand-year-old" eggs), dòuzhìpǐn (bean products like bean curd, dried bean curd, bean-curd skin, deep-fried bean curd, "smelly" bean curd, fermented bean curd, bean noodles, fermented black beans, etc.), tiáowèipǐn (spices and flavorings), guāntou (canned goods), tángguǒ (candy), yān (cigarettes), jiǔ (wines and liquors), jiāngcài (pickled vegetables), niúyáng ròu (beef and lamb, available mostly to Moslems), ròulèi (pork, pork ribs, ground pork, and pork lard), jī (chicken), yā (duck), and hǎixiān (seafood).

A MARKET IN BĚIJĪNG



6. B: Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài  
Dōngdān Cāishichǎngde  
xībianr. The movie theater is just on the  
west side of the Dōngdān Market.

Notes on No. 6

Jiù, "right," "exactly," "just": In earlier material this word was translated as "right." In this sentence, jiù is translated as "just," to avoid confusion with the direction "right" (yòu).

Dōngdān Cāishichǎngde xībianr, "the west side of the Dōngdān Market," or, more literally, "the Dōngdān Market's west side": Notice that this long modifying phrase is marked with -de, in contrast to zhèr fùjìn.

Direction words: The conventional Chinese order for the points on the compass is dōng, nán, xī, běi, "east, south, west, north." Direction names are a part of many Chinese place names. Here are some examples:

Húběi	"North of the (Dōngtíng) lake"
Húnán	"South of the (Dōngtíng) lake"
Héběi	"North of the (Yellow) river"
Hénán	"South of the (Yellow) river"
Shāndōng	"East of the (Tàiháng) mountains"
Shānxī	"West of the (Tàiháng) mountains"
Běijīng	"Northern capital"
Nánjīng	"Southern capital"
Táiběi	"Taiwan North"
Táinán	"Taiwan South"

7. A: Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn  
wǎng dōng zǒu, duì bu  
duì? When I have gone out of the hotel,  
I walk to the east. Is that  
correct?  
B: Duì le. That's correct.
8. A: Hǎo, běibianr shi Dōngdān  
Cāishichǎng. Nánbianr ne? Okay, on the north side is the  
Dōngdān Market. How about on the  
south side?  
B: Nánbianr shi Dōngdān  
Gōngyuán. On the south side is Dōngdān Park.

9. A: Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài cǎishichǎngde xībianr shì bu shì?      The movie theater is just on the west side of the market, is that it?  
 B: Shì.      Yes.

Notes on Nos. 7-9

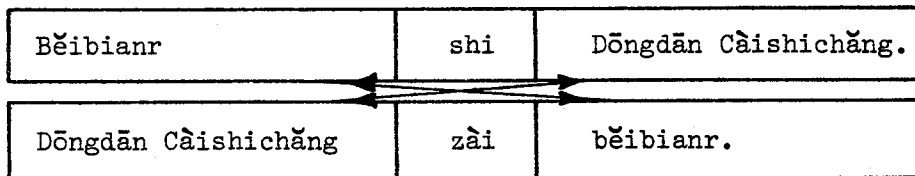
Location words and shì, yǒu, and zài: Shì, yǒu, and zài are translated into English as some form of the verb "to be." The English translations may mask the differences in meaning among the three verbs. Shì is used for identity; zài is used for location; and yǒu is used for existence.

REFERENCE LIST TRANSLATION      LITERAL TRANSLATION

Běibianr <u>shì</u> Dōngdān Cǎishichǎng.	(On the north side <u>is</u> the Dōngdān Market.)	(The north side <u>is</u> the Dōngdān Market.)
Diànyǐngyuàn <u>zài</u> Cǎishichǎngde xībianr.	(The movie theater <u>is on</u> the west side of the market.)	(The movie theater <u>is located on</u> the market's west side.)
Fàndiàn lǐbianr <u>yǒu</u> yige xiǎomǎibù.	(There's a variety shop in the hotel.)	(Inside the hotel <u>exists</u> a variety shop.)

In the first example, it is possible to say Běibianr shì Dōngdān Cǎishichǎng because the market occupies the whole north side of the street. You would probably not phrase the sentence this way if you were talking about the location of a telephone booth or a newsstand.

Notice the difference in word order between sentences with shì and sentences with zài.



10. A: Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, wǒ xiān qù kàn yige péngyou. Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.

Notes on No. 10

Qù kàn: The verb qù, like the verb lái, is frequently followed by a phrase expressing the purpose of the action.

Yǐqián, "before": Notice that in Chinese yǐqián comes at the end of the clause, while in English "before" comes at the beginning.

kàn diànyǐng	<u>yǐqián</u>
<u>before</u>	I see the movie

Yige: When the word yige is stressed, it means "one." When the word is unstressed or toneless, it means "a" or "an."

11. A: Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyou mài tángde? Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?  
 B: Yǒu. Yǒu yige xiǎomàibù. Zài nèibianr. Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.

Notes on No. 11

Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu...? This question illustrates another way in which sentences containing zài and yǒu may differ: Zài allows the noun to be placed at the beginning of the sentence, making the noun DEFINITE. Yǒu allows the noun to be placed at the end of the sentence, making the noun INDEFINITE. In English, "a/an" and "the" express the idea of indefinite and definite. In Chinese, word order is used to express the same idea.

Xiǎomàibù zài fàndiàn                      The variety shop is in the hotel.  
lǐbianr.

Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu (yige)              Inside the hotel there is a variety  
xiǎomàibù.                                      shop.

Unless otherwise specified, a noun before the verb is never indefinite:

Cāntīng zài nǎr?                      Where is the dining room? (DEFINITE)  
Cāntīng zài zhèr.                      The dining room is here.

An indefinite noun is normally placed after the verb:

Nǎr yǒu cāntīng?                      Where is there a dining room? (INDEFINITE)  
 Zhèr yǒu cāntīng.                      There is a dining room here.

Mài tángde, "a place to buy candy," or, more literally, "one that sells candy": The noun modified by this phrase has been left off the end of the phrase. This expression is understood to refer to either the person who does something or the place where something is done. Mài tángde could be translated in exchange ll as "candy seller" or "candy counter." In some other context it might refer to a "candy store" or a "candy department." (Notice that the English asks where you can BUY something, but the Chinese equivalent asks where something is SOLD.)

Xiǎomàibù, "variety shop," is a small shop inside a building. In a museum the shop would sell cigarettes, sweet buns, and soda. In a hotel it would sell a wide variety of goods, including souvenirs, soap, thermoses, socks, fruit, bread, and wine.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 12. wàibianr (wàibian) | outside  |
| 13. yǐhòu              | after  |
| 14. yòubianr (yòubian) | right side   |
| 15. zuǒbianr (zuǒbian) | left side  |
| 16. xiǎoxué            | elementary school  |
| 17. zhōngxué           | middle school (the equivalent of<br>junior and senior high school) |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Yǐhòu, "after," is used in the same position in a sentence as yǐqián, "before."

Tā mǎile dōngxì yǐhòu, zài              After he has bought some things,  
 qù kàn péngyou.                              he will go to see a friend.

In the Money Module, Unit 4, you learned that completion le is placed directly after the verb if the amount of the sentence object is specified, but is placed at the end of the sentence if the amount is not stated.

AMOUNT UNSPECIFIED: Wǒ mǎi fānwǎn le. I bought rice bowls.

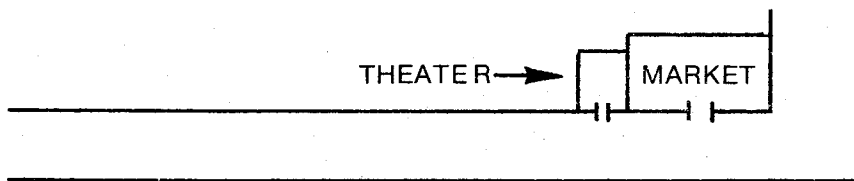
AMOUNT SPECIFIED: Wǒ mǎile shíge fānwǎn. I bought ten rice bowls.

In the example for yǐhòu, le is used in another setting, the dependent clause of a sentence. In this case, the marker le is placed directly after the verb, whether or not the amount of the object is stated.

Mǎile shū yǐhòu, tā jiù zǒu le. After he bought the books, he left.

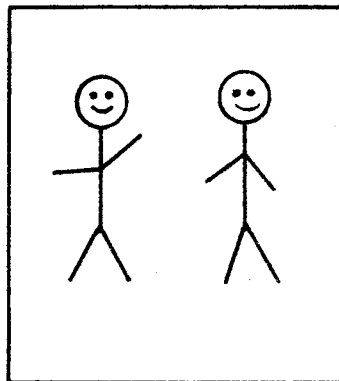
Mǎile wǔběn shū yǐhòu, tā jiù zǒu le. After he bought five books, he left.

Zuǒbianr, yòubianr: In English, we generally assign left and right from the point of view of the observer: "As you look at the two buildings, the movie theater will be on the (your) left, and the market will be on the (your) right." It is common for Chinese to assign left and right from the point of view of the object itself. For instance, the theater shown below might be described in Chinese as being on the right side of the market.



From the point of view of the market, with the entrance as its "front side," the theater is indeed located on the market's right.

The same difference shows up in describing the relative locations of people or places in a photograph. In English, most people would say that Comrade Lǐ is to the left of Comrade Mǎ in the picture below. In Chinese, many people would say Lǐ Tóngzhì zài Mǎ Tóngzhìde yòubianr.



Lǐ Tóngzhì Mǎ Tóngzhì



Of course, the way of assigning left and right varies with speakers of both languages and with different situations.

Xiǎoxué, zhōngxué; "primary school," "high school" (literally, "small study," "middle study"): In the PRC and in Taiwan, primary school (xiǎoxué) includes grades one through six. Junior high school has grades one through three, and senior high school also has grades one through three.



Běijīng street scene

## VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Things in Nature

air	kōngqì
animal	dōngwu
beach	hǎitān
bird	niǎo (yìzhī, yíge)
bushes	guānmucōng (yíkuài, yípiàn, "a stretch of")
cave	shāndòng
cloud	yún (yìduǒ, yípiàn, yìcéng)
desert	shāmò (yípiàn, "a stretch of")
dew	lùshuǐ (yìdī, "a drop of")
earth [ <u>the planet</u> ]	dìqiú
earthquake	dìzhèn (yíci)
fire	huǒ
flower	huā (yìduǒ, yìzhī)
fog	wù
forest	shùlínzi (yíge, yípiàn, "a stretch of")
grass	cǎo (yìgēn)
ground, on the	dìshàng
hail	báozi (yíli bái, "a hailstone"; yìchǎng, yìzhèn bái, "a hailstorm")
hill	xiǎo shān (yízuò, yíge)
hills	qiūlíng (yípiàn, "a stretch of")
hurricane	jùfēng (yíci, yìchǎng)
ice	bīng
insect	chóngzi
insects [ <u>scientific term</u> ]	kūnchóng
island	dǎo, hǎidǎo [ <u>in the sea</u> ]
lake	hú
lightning	shǎndiàn
meadow	cǎodì (yíkuài, yípiàn)
moon	yuèliang, yuèqiú [ <u>astronomical term</u> ]
mountain	shān (yízuò)
mud	ní, níbā
ocean	hǎi
path	xiǎo lù (yìtiáo)
pebble	shítou zǐr (yíli, yíge)

planet	xíngxīng (yìkē)
plant	zhǐwù
rain	yǔ (yìchǎng)
rainbow	cǎihóng (yídào)
river	hé (yìtiáo)
rock	yánshí
sea	hǎi
sky	tiān, tiānkōng
snow	xuě (yìchǎng; yìduī, "a pile of")
star	xīngxīng (yìkē), héngxīng (yìkē) [ <u>astro-</u> <u>nomical term</u> ]
stone	shítou (yíkuài)
storm	bàofēngyǔ (yìchǎng, yíci)
stream	xiǎo hé, xiǎo xī (yìtiáo)
sun	tàiyang
sunrise	rìchū (yíci)
sunset	rìluò (yíci)
sunshine	yángguāng
thunder	léi
tree	shù (yìkē)
typhoon	táifēng (yíci, yìchǎng)
valley	shāngǔ
volcano	huǒshān (yízuò)
waterfall	pùbù
wind	fēng
woods	shùlínzi (yíge, yípiàn, "a stretch of")

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn<br>zài zhèr fùjìn.<br>(The Dōngdān Theater is<br>in this area.) | <u>You</u> : Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì<br>zài zhèr fùjìn?<br>(Is the Dōngdān Theater in this<br>area?) |
| 2. Wáng Tóngzhì jiā zài zhèr fùjìn.  | Wáng Tóngzhì jiā shì bu shì zài zhèr<br>fùjìn?   |
| 3. Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nèr fùjìn.   | Nǐ péngyou jiā shì bu shì zài nèr<br>fùjìn?  |
| 4. Běijīng Fàndiàn zài zhèr fùjìn.   | Běijīng Fàndiàn shì bu shì zài zhèr<br>fùjìn?  |
| 5. Nèige shāngdiàn zài zhèr fùjìn.   | Nèige shāngdiàn shì bu shì zài zhèr<br>fùjìn?  |
| 6. Nèige xuéxiào zài zhèr fùjìn.   | Nèige xuéxiào shì bu shì zài zhèr<br>fùjìn?  |
| 7. Nèige fànguǎnr zài zhèr fùjìn.  | Nèige fànguǎnr shì bu shì zài zhèr<br>fùjìn?   |

B. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu<br>yínháng ma?<br>(Is there a bank in the<br>vicinity of the movie<br>theater?) | <u>You</u> : Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu<br>yínháng?<br>(Is there a bank in the vicinity<br>of the movie theater?) |
| 2. Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu yínháng<br>ma?  | Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?  |
| 3. Tā jiā fùjìn yǒu gōngyuán ma?   | Tā jiā fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu gōngyuán?  |
| 4. Nèige xuéxiào fùjìn yǒu<br>fànguǎnr ma?   | Nèige xuéxiào fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu<br>fànguǎnr?  |
| 5. Nèige fànguǎnr fùjìn yǒu<br>shāngdiàn ma?   | Nèige fànguǎnr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu<br>shāngdiàn?  |

6. Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma?

Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?

7. Dōngdān Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu shāngdiàn ma?

Dōngdān Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu meiyou shāngdiàn?

C. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?  
(Is there a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?)

You: Yínháng shì bu shì zài diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn?  
(Is the bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?)

2. Dōngdān fùjìn yǒu meiyou cǎishichǎng?

Cǎishichǎng shì bu shì zài Dōngdān fùjìn?

3. Gōngyuán fùjìn yǒu meiyou xuéxiào?

Xuéxiào shì bu shì zài gōngyuán fùjìn?

4. Nàr fùjìn yǒu meiyou lǐfǎde?

Lǐfǎde shì bu shì zài nàr fùjìn?

5. Běijīng Fàndiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou diànyǐngyuàn?

Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài Běijīng Fàndiàn fùjìn?

6. Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyou yínháng?

Yínháng shì bu shì zài nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn?

7. Nǐ jiā fùjìn yǒu meiyou xuéxiào?

Xuéxiào shì bu shì zài nǐ jiā fùjìn?

D. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
(cue) no  
(Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?)

You: Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyou diànyǐngyuàn.  
(Not around here. There's no movie theater in this area.)

OR  
Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
(cue) yes  
(Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?)

Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì zài zhèr fùjìn.  
(The Dōngdān Theater is in this area.)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. Dōngdān Cāishichǎng shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?    yes | Dōngdān Cāishichǎng shì zài zhèr fùjìn.          |
| 3. Dōngdān Gōngyuán shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?    no     | Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyou gōngyuán.   |
| 4. Xiǎomàibù shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?    yes           | Xiǎomàibù shì zài zhèr fùjìn.                    |
| 5. Mài tángde shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?    no           | Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyou mài tángde. |
| 6. Běijīng Fàndiàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?    yes     | Běijīng Fàndiàn shì zài zhèr fùjìn.              |

E. Transformation Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ zhīdao yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén ma?<br>(Do you know at what time the bank opens?) | <u>You</u> : Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén?<br>(Do you know at what time the bank opens?) |
| 2. Nǐ zhīdao yínháng zài nǎli ma?   | Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao yínháng zài nǎli?   |
| 3. Tā zhīdao nèige fànguǎnzi shì shéide ma?   | Tā zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige fànguǎnzi shì shéide?   |
| 4. Lǐ Tóngzhì zhīdao nǐ yǒu duōshao qián ma?  | Lǐ Tóngzhì zhīdao bu zhīdao nǐ yǒu duōshao qián?  |
| 5. Fāng Xiānsheng zhīdao nǐ shénme shíhou lái ma?   | Fāng Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhīdao nǐ shénme shíhou lái?   |
| 6. Nǐ àiren zhīdao mài tángde xìng shénme ma?   | Nǐ àiren zhīdao bu zhīdao mài tángde xìng shénme?   |
| 7. Tā àiren zhīdao Sūn Tóngzhì shénme shíhou gōngzuò ma?  | Tā àiren zhīdao bu zhīdao Sūn Tóngzhì shénme shíhou gōngzuò?  |

F. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù.  
(cue) zěnme  
(Go from here to there.)  
OR Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán  
dào diànyǐngyuán qù.  
(cue) dōng  
(Go from Dōngdān Park  
to the movie theater.)

- You: Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù zěnme zǒu?  
(How do you go from here to  
there?)  
Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào  
diànyǐngyuán qù, wàng dōng  
zǒu, duì bu duì?  
(To go from Dōngdān Park to the  
movie theater, I go to the  
east. Right?)

2. Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào  
càishichǎng qù. qián
3. Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Sānlǐtún  
qù. zěnme
4. Cóng Qiánmén Dàjiē dào Rìtán Lù  
qù. xī
5. Cóng Guānghuá Lù dào Wángfǔjǐng  
Dàjiē qù. běi
6. Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Wángfǔjǐng  
Dàjiē qù. yòu

- Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào càishichǎng  
qù, wàng qián zǒu, duì bu duì?
- Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Sānlǐtún qù  
zěnme zǒu?
- Cóng Qiánmén Dàjiē dào Rìtán Lù qù,  
wàng xī zǒu, duì bu duì?
- Cóng Guānghuá Lù dào Wángfǔjǐng  
Dàjiē qù, wàng běi zǒu, duì bu  
duì?
- Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Wángfǔjǐng  
Dàjiē qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu  
duì?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn  
wàng dōng zǒu, duì  
bu duì?  
(cue) xī  
(After I come out of  
that hotel, I go to  
the east. Right?)
2. Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng xī  
zǒu, duì bu duì? nán
3. Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nán  
zǒu, duì bu duì? běi
4. Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng běi  
zǒu, duì bu duì? zuǒ

- You: Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng xī  
zǒu, duì bu duì?  
(After I come out of that hotel,  
I go to the west. Right?)
- Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nán zǒu,  
duì bu duì?
- Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng běi zǒu,  
duì bu duì?
- Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng zuǒ zǒu,  
duì bu duì?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì? nèibian | Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì? |
| 6. Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì? yǒu | Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng yǒu zǒu, duì bu duì?     |
| 7. Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng yǒu zǒu, duì bu duì? dōng    | Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?    |

H. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zuǒbianr shi diànyǐngyuàn.<br>(cue) Dōngdān Cǎishichǎng<br>(To the left is the movie theater.) | <u>You</u> : Dōngdān Cǎishichǎngde zuǒbianr shi diànyǐngyuàn.<br>(To the left of the Dōngdān Market is the movie theater.) |
| 2. Yòubianr yǒu shāngdiàn.<br>zhèige fàndiàn   | Zhèige fàndiàn de yòubianr yǒu shāngdiàn.  |
| 3. Zuǒbianr shi mài tángde.<br>xiǎomàibù   | Xiǎomàibù de zuǒbianr shi mài tángde.  |
| 4. Wàibianr yǒu màibàode.<br>gōngyuán  | Gōngyuán de wàibianr yǒu màibàode.   |
| 5. Zuǒbianr yǒu fàndiàn.<br>cǎishichǎng  | Cǎishichǎng de zuǒbianr yǒu fàndiàn.   |
| 6. Yòubianr yǒu mài tángde.<br>diànyǐngyuàn  | Diànyǐngyuán de yòubianr yǒu mài tángde.   |
| 7. Wàibianr shi shāngdiàn.<br>fàndiàn  | Fàndiàn de wàibianr shi shāngdiàn.   |



I. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Cāishichǎngde xībianr  
yǒu diànyǐngyuàn.  
(To the west of the  
market is a movie  
theater.)

You: Nèige diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài  
cāishichǎngde xībianr.  
(That movie theater is to the  
west of the market.)

2. Diànyǐngyuànde wàibianr yǒu mài  
bàode.

Nèige mài bàode jiù zài  
diànyǐngyuànde wàibianr.

3. Gōngyuànde lǐbianr yǒu mài  
qìshuǐde.

Nèige mài qìshuǐde jiù zài gōngyuànde  
lǐbianr.

4. Xuéxiàode dōngbianr yǒu yínháng.

Nèige yínháng jiù zài xuéxiàode  
dōngbianr.

5. Fànguǎnr nánbianr yǒu shāngdiàn.

Nèige shāngdiàn jiù zài fànguǎnrde  
nánbianr.

6. Yínhángde yòubianr yǒu fànguǎnr.

Nèige fànguǎnr jiù zài yínhángde  
yòubianr.

7. Fàndiànde běibianr yǒu  
diànyǐngyuàn.

Nèige diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài fàndiànde  
běibianr.

J. Combination Drill

1. Speaker: Tā qù kàn diànyǐng.  
Tā qù kàn yige  
péngyou.  
(He goes to see a  
movie. He goes to  
visit a friend.)

You: Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān  
qù kàn yige péngyou.  
(Before he goes to see a movie,  
he first goes to visit a  
friend.)

2. Tā qù xué Zhōngguo huà. Tā qù  
mǎi yìběn shū.

Qù xué Zhōngguo huà yǐqián, tā xiān  
qù mǎi yìběn shū.

3. Tā qù mǎi shū. Tā qù huàn  
yìdiǎnr qián.

Qù mǎi shū yǐqián, tā xiān qù huàn  
yìdiǎnr qián.

4. Tā qù kàn diànyǐng. Tā qù mǎi  
táng.

Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù  
mǎi táng.

5. Tā qù gōngzuò. Tā qù kàn Zhào  
Tàitai.

Qù gōngzuò yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn  
Zhào Tàitai.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. Tā qù Měiguó. Tā qù niàn Yīngwén.                   | Qù Měiguó yǐqián, tā xiān qù niàn Yīngwén.                   |
| 7. Tā qù kàn Lín Xiānsheng. Tā qù mǎi yìdiǎnr diǎnxīn. | Qù kàn Lín Xiānsheng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi yìdiǎnr diǎnxīn. |

K. Transformation Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn péngyou. (Before seeing the movie, he first goes to visit a friend.) | <u>You</u> : Tā kàn péngyou yǐhòu, qù kàn diànyǐng. (After he visits a friend, he goes to see a movie.) |
| 2. Qù xué Zhōngguó huà yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi shū.  | Tā mǎi shū yǐhòu, qù xué Zhōngguó huà.  |
| 3. Qù mǎi shū yǐqián, tā xiān qù huàn qián.   | Tā huàn qián yǐhòu, qù mǎi shū.   |
| 4. Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi táng.   | Tā mǎi táng yǐhòu, qù kàn diànyǐng.   |
| 5. Qù gōngzuò yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn Zhào Tàitai.   | Tā kàn Zhào Tàitai yǐhòu, qù gōngzuò.   |
| 6. Qù niàn lìshǐ yǐqián, tā xiān qù niàn Yīngwén.   | Tā niàn Yīngwén yǐhòu, qù niàn lìshǐ.   |
| 7. Qù kàn Lǐ Xiānsheng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi diǎnxīn.  | Tā mǎi diǎnxīn yǐhòu, qù kàn Lǐ Xiānsheng.  |

L. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèr yǒu meiyǒu mài tángde?<br>(cue) lǐbianr<br>(Is there a candy store here?) | <u>You</u> : Yǒu, mài tángde zài lǐbianr.<br>(Yes, there's a candy store inside.) |
| 2. Xiǎomàibù nàr yǒu meiyǒu mài qīshuǐde? zuǒbianr   | Yǒu, mài qīshuǐde zài zuǒbianr.   |
| 3. Xuéxiào nàr yǒu meiyǒu mài Yīngwén zìdiǎnde? dōngbianr  | Yǒu, mài Yīngwén zìdiǎnde zài dōngbianr.  |
| 4. Nàr yǒu meiyǒu mài júzide? yòubianr   | Yǒu, mài júzide zài yòubianr.   |
| 5. Gōngyuán fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mài zázhiǎde? nánbianr  | Yǒu, mài zázhiǎde zài nánbianr.   |
| 6. Fàndiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mài ditúde? xībianr  | Yǒu, mài ditúde zài xībianr.  |
| 7. Càishichǎngli yǒu meiyǒu mài píjiǔde? nèibianr  | Yǒu, mài píjiǔde zài nèibianr.  |

## UNIT 3

## REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. B: Nǐ chūqu a!   | Oh, you're going out!  |
| A: Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jībēn shū.                              | I thought I would go out to buy a few books.   |
| 2. A: Láojià, nǎr yǒu mài shūde?                              | Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?  |
| C: Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà.          | There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard that is very large.                             |
| 3. A: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?                         | Is the New China Bookstore far from here?  |
| C: Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.  | It's not far; it's very close.   |
| 4. A: Zěnmē qù? Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma?                           | How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?   |
| C: Zǒuzhe qù kényi.   | It's possible to get there by walking.   |
| 5. A: Zěnmē zǒu?  | How do I go?   |
| C: Cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi guāi, jiù shi Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē. | You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard.                           |
| 6. *A: Wǒ cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi guāi, duì bu duì?        | I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?  |
| C: Duì le.  | That's correct.  |
| 7. A: Zǒu duō yuǎn?   | How far do I go?   |
| C: Zǒu bù yuǎn, lùdōngde dìyige dàlóu jiù shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn. | Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore. |
| 8. *A: Láojià, nèige dàlóu shi Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma?             | Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore?   |
| D: Shì.   | Yes.   |

---

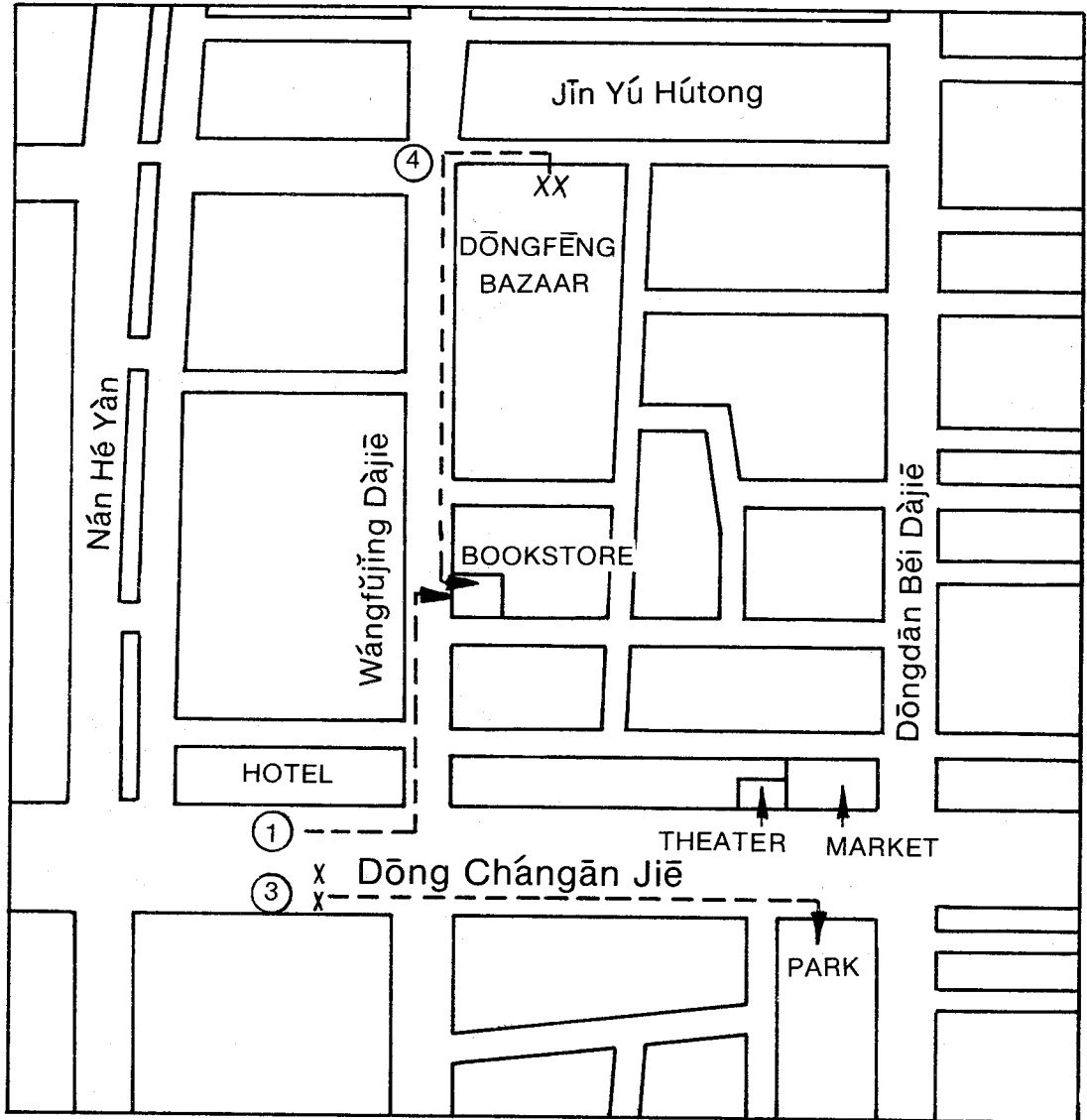
\*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

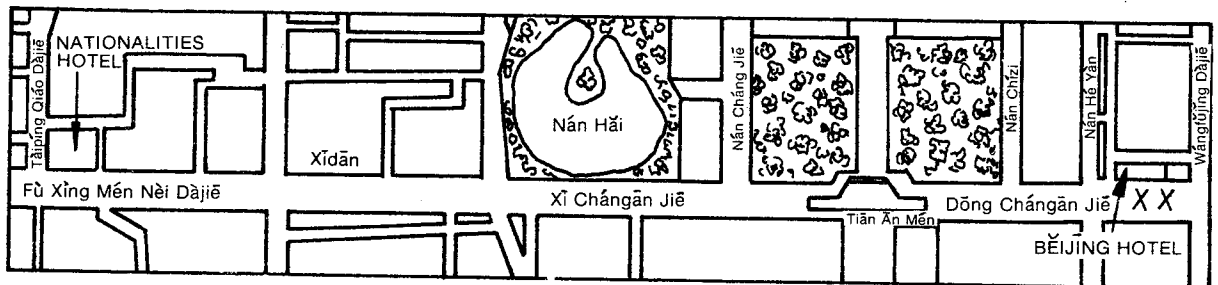
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 9. zhuǎn                                  | to turn                                     |
| 10. chūlai                                | to come out                                 |
| 11. lùxī                                  | the west side of the street                 |
| 12. lùběi                                 | the north side of the street                |
| 13. lùnán                                 | the south side of the street                |
| 14. bǎihuò gōngsī                         | department store                            |
| 15. Bǎihuò Dàlóu                          | (name of a department store in<br>Běijīng)  |
| 16. shàngbianr (shàngbian)                | above; the top, the upper part              |
| 17. xiàbianr (xiàbian)                    | below, under; the bottom, the lower<br>part |
| 18. dǐxia                                 | underneath; the underneath                  |
| 19. zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiàn)<br>(zhōngjiān) | the middle, the space in between            |
| 20. pángbiānr (pángbiān)                  | beside, next to, alongside of;<br>the side  |

MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE

DISPLAYS I, III, IV



DISPLAY II



## VOCABULARY

Bǎihuò Dàilóu	(name of a department store in Běijīng)
bǎihuò gōngsī	department store
cháo	to, towards
chūlai	to come out
chūqu	to go out
dàjiē	boulevard
dàlóu	building
dāmén(r)	entrance
dǐxia	underneath; the underneath
duó yuǎn	how far
guǎi	to turn
ji-	a few
jige	several
jìn	to be close, to be near
láojià	excuse me
lí	from, apart from
lùběi	the north side of the street
lùdōng	the east side of the street
lùnán	the south side of the street
lùxī	the west side of the street
pángbiānr (pángbiān)	beside, next to, alongside of; the side
shàngbiānr (shàngbiān)	above, the top, the upper part
shūdiàn	bookstore
xiàbiānr (xiàbiān)	below, under; the bottom, the lower part
Xīnhuá Shūdiàn	New China Bookstore (Běijīng)
yíge	a, an
yuǎn	to be far
zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiàn) (zhōngjiān)	the middle, the space in between
zhuǎn	to turn
zǒuzhe	walking

(introduced on C-2 tape)

dài biǎo	to wear a watch
Hàn-Rì zìdiǎn	Chinese-Japanese dictionary
niàn	to be pronounced, to be read as
Rì-Hàn zìdiǎn	Japanese-Chinese dictionary
yíjiàn yīshang	a piece of clothing
zǎo	to be early
zǒu dào	to walk to



Wén Wǔ Temple, near Sun-Moon Lake in Taiwan



## REFERENCE NOTES

1. B: Nǐ chūqu a! Oh, you're going out!  
 A: Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jībēn shū. I thought I would go out to buy a few books.

Notes on No. 1

Chūqu, "to go out (away from the speaker)": The verb chū means "to go/come out," "to exit," in the sense of leaving an area. Chū must be followed either by the name of the place being left (as in chūle zhèige fàndiàn) or by the verb lái or qù used as a DIRECTIONAL ENDING. When lái or qù follows, the verb indicates not only that the person exits but also that the person exits towards or away from the speaker. Chūqu corresponds to the English "going out," and chūlai to "coming out."

Tā zǎoshang jiù chūqu le. He went out this morning.

Tā zài nèige shāngdiànli mǎi cài yǐjīng sānshífēn zhōng le! Hái méi chūlai! He has been in that shop buying groceries for thirty minutes already, and he hasn't come out yet!

When the verbs lái and qù are used as directional endings, they are unstressed and toneless.

Nǐ chūqu a! Sometimes this expression might be used as a greeting. Instead of saying "hello" when greeting a friend or acquaintance, the Chinese state the obvious. For example, if you (Ān Dàwèi) drop in unexpectedly on a Chinese friend, probably the first thing he will say is O! Ān Dàwèi! Nǐ lái le! Qǐng jìn, "Oh! Ān Dàwèi! You have come! Please come in." Or if you run an errand and then return, you will probably be greeted with Huílai le, "You're back." A friend of yours who runs into you downtown may say Nǐ yě dào zhèr lái le, "You have come here too." In Chinese these remarks are a common form of greeting.

Jībēn: The bound word jǐ- means "a few." It is unstressed and often toneless. When stressed, jǐ- is the question word "how many."

Tā mǎile jībēn (OR jībēn) shū. He bought a few books.

Tā mǎile jǐbēn shū? How many books did he buy?

Intonation and context will often help you decide which jǐ- is being used.

Chūqu mǎi jiběn shū: The phrase following the verb chūqu indicates the purpose of going out. Purpose expressions often follow the verbs lái, qù, and their compounds.

2. A: Láojià, nǎr yǒu mài shūde? Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?  
C: Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà. There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard that is very large.

Notes on No. 2

Láojià is a Běijīng expression used when asking a person to do something. (In exchange 2, a person is being asked to give directions.) Speakers of Chinese from other areas of China would probably use qǐngwèn.

Hěn dà, "(It is) very big": Notice that in the English translation two Chinese sentences have been combined. Literally, the Chinese means "On Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard there is a New China Bookstore. It is very large." Chinese punctuation rules allow two sentences to be separated by a comma instead of a period if the relationship between the sentences is considered very close.

Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē: The Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard area is a major shopping district in Běijīng. Bǎihuò Dàlóu (a state-owned department store), Dōngfēng Shìchǎng (a large enclosed market), bookstores, antique shops, and hotels are found there.

3. A: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Is the New China Bookstore far from here?  
C: Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn. It's not far; it's very close.

Notes on No. 3

Lí: The prepositional verb lí means "from" in the sense of "to be apart from." Like other prepositional verb phrases, a phrase containing lí precedes the main verb--in this case, the adjectival verb yuǎn, "to be far."

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn	lí	zhèr	yuǎn ma?
(New China Bookstore	from	here	far?)

"Is the New China Bookstore far from here?"

Unlike other prepositional verbs, lí cannot be made negative. You cannot say that one point is "not apart" from another. You say that two points are "not close to each other" or "not far from each other."

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bù jìn.

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn.

Cóng and lí are both translated as "from." Cóng is used with the point of origin, and lí is used with the distance between two points.

4. A: Zěnmē qù? Zǒuzhe qù kéyī ma? How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?  
 C: Zǒuzhe qù kéyī. It's possible to get there by walking.

Notes on No. 4

Zěnmē qù? looks very much like zěnmē zǒu, which asks about what route you should take. Zěnmē qù? asks about your means of transportation.

Zǒuzhe, "walking": When the marker -zhe is added to an action verb, the verb form corresponds to the English -ing. The -zhe puts the focus on action continuing for some time. Because of this, -zhe is called a marker of DURATION.

Tā xuézhē xuézhē jiù bù xiǎng xuéle.

He was studying and studying it, and then he didn't want to study it anymore.

In the sentence Zǒuzhe qù kényi, the marker -zhe is attached to one verb (zǒu) to modify another verb (qù). This indicates that the action of the verb to which -zhe is added occurs simultaneously with the action of the verb modified. The action of "walking" modifies the action of "going there." The phrase can be understood as "walkingly go." \*

Here are some other examples:

Tā měitiān chīzhe fàn kàn  
diànshì.

Every day he watches television while eating.

Nǐ shēngzhe bìng hái zuò  
shì!

You work even while you're sick!

5. A: Zěnme zǒu?

How do I go?

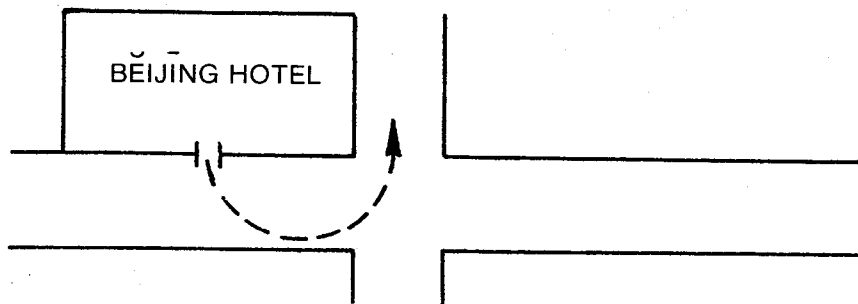
C: Cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi  
guǎi, jiù shì Wángfǔjǐng  
Dàjiē.

You go out (from) the entrance,  
turn to the north, and that's  
Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard.

Notes on No. 5

Cháo: The prepositional verb cháo, literally meaning "facing towards," is used in Běijīng.

Guǎi, "to turn": The verb guǎi usually refers to a 90-degree turn, but you can see below that it is used in exchange 5 to refer to a 180-degree turn. In English we would break up the directions into three steps, saying "You go out the entrance, turn left, and turn left again at the corner." In Chinese, if the building you are leaving is on a corner, going along one side and then turning the corner may be thought of as a single step.



\*Because the two actions amount to one action for all practical purposes, this may be one of the more difficult examples for the marker -zhe. Learn this sentence as a whole for now.

Jiù shì literally means "(that) is precisely" or "right there is." Here you see jiù used to mean "right," "just," "precisely": "You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard right there."

6. A: Wǒ cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo  
bǐ guǎi, duì bu duì? I go out (from) the entrance and  
turn to the north. Is that  
correct?  
C: Duì le. That's correct.

7. A: Zǒu duō yuǎn? How far do I go?  
C: Zǒu bù yuǎn, lùdōngde dìyige  
dàlóu jiù shì Xīnhuá Go a short distance, and the first  
Shūdiàn. building on the east side of the  
street is the New China Bookstore.

Notes on No. 7

Duó yuǎn: The question "how far" is formed like the questions duó dà, "how old," and duó jiǔ, "how long."

Zǒu bù yuǎn: Notice that there are two verbs in this phrase. The first verb indicates the action, and the second verb indicates the extent of the action. (The Transportation Module includes notes about how to modify verbs.)

Lùdōng, "the east side of the street": This word is a short form. The directions -nán, -xī, and -běi may also be used in similar short forms. The long form of lùdōng is lù dōngbianr.

Notice that "on the east side of the street" comes at the end of a phrase in English, while in Chinese lùdōngde begins the phrase.

<u>lùdōngde</u>	dìyige dàlóu	
	the first building	<u>on the east</u>

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>8. A: Láojià, nège dàlóu shì<br/>Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma?<br/>D: Shì.</p>  | <p>Excuse me, is that building the<br/>New China Bookstore?<br/>Yes.</p>   |
| <p>9. zhuǎn<br/>10. chūlai<br/>11. lùxī<br/>12. lùběi<br/>13. lùnán<br/>14. bǎihuò gōngsī<br/>15. Bǎihuò Dàlóu<br/><br/>16. shàngbianr (shàngbian)<br/>17. xiàbianr (xiàbian)<br/><br/>18. dǐxia<br/>19. zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiānr)<br/>(zhōngjiān)<br/>20. pángbiānr (pángbiān)</p> | <p>to turn<br/>to come out<br/>the west side of the street<br/>the north side of the street<br/>the south side of the street<br/>department store<br/>(name of a department store in<br/>Běijīng)<br/>above; the top, the upper part<br/>below, under; the bottom, the lower<br/>part<br/>underneath; the underneath<br/>the middle, the space in between<br/><br/>beside, next to, alongside of;<br/>the side</p> |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Zhuǎn, "to turn," "to make a turn": The verb guǎi, "to turn," is usually preceded by directions such as north/south or left/right. Zhuǎn is more frequently used to talk about turning to the rear.

xiàng hòu zhuǎn	turn around (literally, "towards the back turn")
-----------------	---

Zhuǎn is also the verb to use for "turn" when speaking of going from one street to another.

Cóng Dàlǐ Jiē zhuǎndào Héping Dōnglù.	From Dàlǐ street turn onto Héping East Road.
--	---

(Guǎi cannot be used this way.)

Chūlai, "to come out," is made up of the verb chū, "to exit," plus the verb lái used as a directional ending. This ending tells you that the action is towards the speaker.

Bǎihuò gōngsī, "department store" (literally, "hundred-goods company"): This term is used for large department stores. Smaller stores that sell a variety of merchandise are called bǎihuòdiàn or bǎihuò shāngdiàn.

Bǎihuò Dàlóu, literally, "Hundred-Goods Building": There is only one store in Běijīng with this name; therefore the phrase is used as a proper name. The general term for a large Western-style department store is bǎihuò gōngsī.

Shàngbianr can mean "the top side/surface," "the top part/area," or "a place which is above/up." When used after another noun, shàngbianr may be translated as "on," "on top of," "above," or "over."

Zhèige zhuōzi shàngbianr                      There are four books on this table.  
yǒu sìběn shū.

Fēijī zài yún shàngbianr.                      The plane is above the clouds.

Xiàbianr, "the bottom," "the lower part"; "under," "below"

Wǒ zài tiānqiáo xiàbianr                      I'll wait for you under the overpass.  
děng ni.

Dǐxia, "the underneath"; "underneath"

Shū zài zhuōzi dǐxia.                      The books are underneath the table.

Zhèige dàlóude dǐxia shi                      The underneath of this building is  
yige diànyǐngyuǎn,                      a movie theater, and above there  
shàngmian yǒu fānguǎn hé                      is a restaurant and a store.  
shāngdiàn.

Zhōngjiānr, "the middle," "the space in between"

Wǒde zhuōzi zài wǒ wūzide                      My table is in the middle of my  
zhōngjiānr.                      room.

Zuǒbianr shi yige fàndiàn,                      On the left there's a hotel; on the  
yòubianr shi yige                      right there's a market; and the  
càishichāng, zhōngjiān                      building in between is where I  
nèige dàlóu jiù shi wo                      live.  
zhùde dìfang.

Pángbiānr, "beside," "next to," "alongside of"; "the side"

Wǒ jiù zhù zai tāmen jiā                      I live right next to their place.  
pángbiānr.

Tā pángbiānr nèige rén jiù                      The man beside him is Wáng Lìguó.  
shi Wáng Lìguó.

## DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ xiǎng mǎi jībēn shū.<br>(I would like to buy<br>several books.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jībēn shū.<br>(I would like to go out and<br>buy several books.) |
| 2. Wǒ xiǎng kàn yíge péngyou.  | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge péngyou.   |
| 3. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yífen bào.   | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi yífen bào.  |
| 4. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìdiǎn pánziwǎn.   | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi yìdiǎn pánziwǎn.  |
| 5. Wǒ xiǎng kàn yíge Zhōngguo<br>péngyou.  | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge Zhōngguo<br>péngyou.   |
| 6. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi jikuài féizào.   | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jikuài féizào.  |
| 7. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìbǎ yǔsǎn.  | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi yìbǎ yǔsǎn.   |

B. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi<br>jībēn shū.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) mǎi shūde<br>(I thought I would go<br>out to buy a few<br>books.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jībēn shū.<br>Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu mǎi shūde?<br>(I thought I would go out to<br>buy a few books. May I ask,<br>where is there a place to<br>buy books?) |
| 2. Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge diànyǐng.<br>hǎo diànyǐng   | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge diànyǐng.<br>Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu hǎo diànyǐng?  |
| 3. Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr júzi.<br>càishichǎng   | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr júzi.<br>Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu càishichǎng?  |
| 4. Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr táng.<br>mài tángde  | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr táng.<br>Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu mài tángde?   |
| 5. Wǒ xiǎng chūqu huàn diǎnr<br>Měijīn. yínháng  | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu huàn diǎnr Měijīn.<br>Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu yínháng?   |
| 6. Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jige huāpíng.<br>mài huāpíngde   | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jige huāpíng.<br>Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu mài huāpíngde?  |
| 7. Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr féizào.<br>xiǎomàibù   | Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr féizào.<br>Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu xiǎomàibù?  |



C. Transformation Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?<br>(Is the New China Bookstore far from here?) | <u>You</u> : Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>(Is the New China Bookstore far from here?) |
| 2. Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?   | Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?   |
| 3. Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?  | Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  |
| 4. Diànyǐngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?   | Diànyǐngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?   |
| 5. Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?   | Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma?   |
| 6. Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?  | Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  |
| 7. Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?  | Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  |

D. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>(Is the New China Bookstore far from here?) | <u>You</u> : Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?<br>(Is the New China Bookstore far from here? How do you get there from here?) |
| 2. Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma?   | Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?   |
| 3. Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?   | Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?   |
| 4. Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?   | Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?   |
| 5. Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  | Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?  |

6. Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  
Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?
7. Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  
Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?

E. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  
(Is the New China Bookstore far from here?)
- OR
- Yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr jìn ma?  
(Is the post office nearby [close to here]?)
- You: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.  
(The New China Bookstore isn't far from here. It's quite close.)
- Yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr bú jìn, hěn yuǎn.  
(The post office isn't nearby. It's quite faraway.)
2. Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí nàr yuǎn ma? Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí nàr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.
3. Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr jìn ma? Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr bú jìn, hěn yuǎn.
4. Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí nàr yuǎn ma? Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí nàr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.
5. Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr jìn ma? Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr bú jìn, hěn yuǎn.
6. Xiǎomàibù lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Xiǎomàibù lí zhèr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.

F. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nèige gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?<br>(Is that park far from here?) | <u>You</u> : Nèige gōngyuán lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.<br>(That park isn't far from here. We can walk.) |
| OR Nèige yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr jìn ma?<br>(Is that post office nearby?)                 | Nèige yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.<br>(That post office is very close to here. We can walk.)   |
| 2. Nèige xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  | Nèige xuéxiào lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.  |
| 3. Nèige cǎishichǎng lí zhèr jìn ma?   | Nèige cǎishichǎng lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.  |
| 4. Nèige dìfang lí zhèr yuǎn ma?   | Nèige dìfang lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.   |
| 5. Nèige shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  | Nèige shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.  |
| 6. Nèige shāngdiàn lí zhèr jìn ma?   | Nèige shāngdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyi zǒuzhe qù.  |

G. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì.<br>(You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's it.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu duì?<br>(I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?)      |
| OR Wǒ cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu duì?<br>(I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?)            | Duì le. Nǐ cóng dāmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì.<br>(That's correct. You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's it.) |
| 2. Nǐ cóng Xīnhuá Shūdiàn chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, jiù shì.  | Wǒ cóng Xīnhuá Shūdiàn chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, duì bu duì?  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. Wǒ cóng diànyǐngyuán chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, duì bu duì? | Duì le. Nǐ cóng diànyǐngyuán chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, jiù shì. |
| 4. Nǐ cóng cǎishìchǎng chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù shì.      | Wǒ cóng cǎishìchǎng chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, duì bu duì?        |
| 5. Wǒ cóng gōngyuán chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, duì bu duì?     | Duì le. Nǐ cóng gōngyuán chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, jiù shì.     |
| 6. Nǐ cóng xiǎomàibù chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, jiù shì.       | Wǒ cóng xiǎomàibù chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, duì bu duì?         |

H. Response Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi bào ma?<br>(cue) běi<br>(Are you going out now to buy a newspaper?) | <u>You</u> : Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù yǒu mǎi bàode, duì bu duì?<br>(That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the north, and there's a place that sells newspapers. Is that correct?) |
| 2. Nǐ jīntiān chūqu mǎi shū ma?<br>xī  | Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù yǒu mǎi shūde, duì bu duì?  |
| 3. Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi píngguǒ ma?<br>dōng  | Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, jiù yǒu mǎi píngguǒde, duì bu duì?  |
| 4. Nǐ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu mǎi pánziwǎn ma? yòu   | Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, jiù yǒu mǎi pánziwǎnde, duì bu duì?  |
| 5. Nǐ jīntiān zǎoshang chūqu mǎi zázhi ma? nán   | Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, jiù yǒu mǎi zázhide, duì bu duì?   |
| 6. Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi júzi ma?<br>zuǒ  | Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, jiù yǒu mǎi júzide, duì bu duì?  |
| 7. Nǐ jīntiān chūqu mǎi píjiǔ ma?<br>xī  | Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù yǒu mǎi píjiǔde, duì bu duì?  |

I. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.  
(cue) How far do I go?  
(The New China Bookstore is quite close-by.)
- You: Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma? Zǒu duō yuǎn?  
(Can I walk? How far do I have to go?)
- OR Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.  
(cue) How do I go?  
(The New China Bookstore is quite close-by.)
- Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma? Zěnme zǒu?  
(Can I walk? How do I go?)
2. Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr hěn jìn. Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma? Zǒu duō yuǎn?  
How far do I go?
3. Xiǎomàibù lí zhèr hěn jìn. Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma? Zěnme zǒu?  
How do I go?
4. Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr hěn jìn. Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma? Zǒu duō yuǎn?  
How far do I go?
5. Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuán lí zhèr hěn jìn. Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma? Zěnme zǒu?  
How do I go?
6. Míngzú Fàndiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn. Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma? Zǒu duō yuǎn?  
How far do I go?

J. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā jīntiān chūlai mǎi shū le ma?<br>(cue) no<br>(Did he come out to buy books today?) | <u>You</u> : Tā jīntiān méi chūlai mǎi shū.<br>(He didn't come out to buy books today.) |
| 2. Nǐ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu le ma?<br>yes   | Wǒ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu le.  |
| 3. Nǐ kànguo nèige diànyǐng ma?<br>no   | Wǒ méi kànguo nèige diànyǐng.   |
| 4. Tā kàn nèige diànyǐng le ma?<br>no   | Tā méi kàn nèige diànyǐng.  |
| 5. Wáng Xiānsheng xiàwǔ chūqu le ma?<br>yes   | Wáng Xiānsheng xiàwǔ chūqu le.  |
| 6. Tā dào nèige cǎishichǎng qùguo ma? no  | Tā méi dào nèige cǎishichǎng qùguo.   |
| 7. Tā yǐjīng chūlai le ma?<br>not yet   | Tā hái méi chūlai ne.   |

## UNIT 4

## REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

1. A: Qǐngwèn cāntīng zài jǐlóu? May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?  
B: Zài èrlóu. It's on the second floor.
2. A: Ōu, wǒ zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. Xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu? Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. When I have gotten off the elevator, which way do I go?  
B: Xiàle diàntī, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shì cāntīng. When you have gotten off the elevator, go to the right, and that's the restaurant.
3. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli yǒu meiyou lǐfǎde dīfang? May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?  
C: Yǒu. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Xià lóu, jiù kànjian le. Yes. From here you go to the left. Go downstairs, and then you'll see it.
4. \* A: Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóutī jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì? From here I first go to the left. After that, when I have gone downstairs, I'll see it. Is that it?  
C: Shì. Yes.
5. A: Jǐlóu mài dìtú? On what floor are maps sold?  
D: Èrlóu. The second floor.  
A: Zěnme zǒu? How do I get there (go)?  
D: Wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde. Go straight to the back. Go upstairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.
6. \* A: Wǒ xiān wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì, shì bu shì? First, I go straight to the back. Then, I go upstairs. And the map department is on the left. Is that it?  
D: Bú shì. Yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde. No, the map department is (just) on the right.

\*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

7. A: Xǐshǒujiān zài shénme  
dìfang? Where is the washroom?
- E: Zài nàli. Wǎng lǐ zǒu, zài  
yòubian. It's over there. Go all the way in,  
and it's on the right.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8. qián front, ahead
9. duìmiàn (duìmiàn) the side facing; across from,  
opposite, facing
10. zhèbian (zhèbian) this way, this side
11. nàbian (nèibian) that way, that side
12. lóutī staircase, stairway, stairs
13. zǒuláng corridor
14. cèsuǒ toilet, rest room
15. jìn to enter
16. -tou end (occurs in place words)
17. -mian(r) surface (occurs in place words)



## VOCABULARY

cāntīng	dining room
cèsuǒ	toilet, rest room
diàntī	elevator
duìmiàn (duìmiàn r)	the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
hòu	back
hòubian (hòubian r)	the back side
jǐlóu	what floor
jìn	to enter
kànjian	to see
lǐfǎ	to cut hair
lǐfǎde dìfang	a place where hair is cut
-lóu	floor, story of a building
lóutī	staircase, stairway, stairs
-mian(r)	surface (occurs in place words)
nǎbian (něibian r)	which way, which side
nàbian (nèibian r)	that way, that side
qián	front, ahead
shàng	to go up
shàng lóu	to go/come upstairs
-tou	end (occurs in place words)
xià	to go down
xià lóu	to go/come downstairs
xǐshǒujiān	washroom
zhèbian (zhèibian r)	this way, this side
zǒuláng	corridor
zuò	to ride (prepositional verb)

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

bàngōngshì	office
wàng	to forget
yàoshi	if
yìbēi	a cup of

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài jǐlóu? May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?  
B: Zài èrlóu. It's on the second floor.

Notes on No. 1

Cāntīng is the word for the dining room of a hotel. A dining room in a house is a fàntīng, and an independent restaurant is a fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr).

Jǐlóu is the question "what floor," more literally, "what-number floor."

2. A: Ōu, wǒ zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. Xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu? Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. When I have gotten off the elevator, which way do I go?  
B: Xiàle diàntī, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shì cāntīng. When you have gotten off the elevator, go to the right, and that's the restaurant.

Notes on No. 2

Zuò diàntī: The verb zuò, literally "to sit," is also used for "to ride" or "to go via" some means of transportation (car, plane, boat, train, etc.). Thus the phrase zuò diàntī means "to ride the elevator."

Èrlóu: For the number of a floor in a building, the word for "two" is èr, rather than liǎng.

Dào èrlóu: This dào is the main verb, meaning "to reach," "to get to." Literally, the first sentence in exchange 2 means "riding the elevator reach the second floor." The verb dào is commonly used instead of dào... qù, "to go to...", for naming several places to be passed through. Here is another example:

- Wǒ xiān dào Běijīng, ránhòu zài dào Shěnyáng. I'm going to Běijīng first, and then to Shěnyáng.

Notice that the verb "go" is used in the English translation of this sentence, although the Chinese says "reach."

Wàng nǎbian zǒu: To ask the question "Go which way?" in Chinese, you say literally "Towards where go?" Wàng nǎbian (nǎli, nǎr) zǒu? To say "Come this way" and "Go that way," you use the same pattern: Wàng zhèbian (zhèli, zhèr) lái and Wàng nǎbian (nǎli, nǎr) qù.

3. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèli yǒu meiyou lǐfāde dìfang? May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?  
C: Yǒu. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Xià lóu, jiù kànjian le. Yes. From here you go to the left. Go downstairs, and then you'll see it.
4. A: Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóutī jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì? From here I first go to the left. After that, when I have gone downstairs, I'll see it. Is that it?  
C: Shì. Yes.

Notes on Nos. 3-4

Lǐfāde dìfang means, literally, "a place where they cut hair." Note that lǐfā is also pronounced lǐfā. \*

Xià lóu literally means "descend from an upper story." The English phrase "go/come downstairs" looks at the same action from another point of view: descend to a lower story.

The verb kànjian, "to see," is called a COMPOUND VERB OF RESULT. You have already learned about compound verbs made up of a verb indicating motion (such as chū, "to exit") followed by a verb indicating direction (lái or qù): chūqu, chūlai. Now you see, in exchanges 3 and 4, a compound verb made up of an action verb (kàn, "to look") and a verb expressing the result of that action (jiàn, "to perceive"). Kànjian can be understood as "to look with the result of perceiving," that is, "to see." Contrast kàn with kànjian:

Wǒ kànle kěshi méi kànjian. I looked but I didn't see.

---

\*An independent barbershop is called a lǐfāguǎn, "hair-cutting establishment."

Here are other examples of compound verbs of result containing the verbs tīng, "to listen," and kān:

Tā gēn ni shuō huà ne.  
Nǐ tīngjian le meiyou?

She is talking with you. Did you hear her?

Kānjian dìyīge lùkǒu, wàng zuǒ guǎi.

Take your first left. (literally, "When you see the first intersection, turn left.")

(Additional characteristics and uses of compound verbs of result will be explained when examples occur in the unit Reference Lists.)

5. A: Jǐlóu mài dìtú?

D: Èrlóu.

A: Zěnme zǒu?

D: Wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde.

On what floor are maps sold?

The second floor.

How do I get there (go)?

Go straight to the back. Go upstairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.

6. A: Wǒ xiān wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì, shì bu shì?

D: Bú shì. Yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde.

First, I go straight to the back.

Then, I go upstairs. And the map department is on the left. Is that it?

No, the map department is (just) on the right.

#### Notes on Nos. 5-6

Jǐlóu mài dìtú? looks as if it should mean "What floor sells maps?" Actually, jǐlóu is a place-word topic, which is translated into English with a prepositional phrase: "on what floor" Then a subject is added: "On what floor do they sell maps?" Or the verb is put into passive tense: "On what floor are maps sold?"

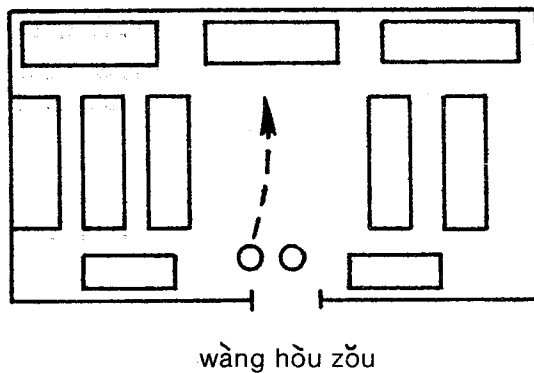
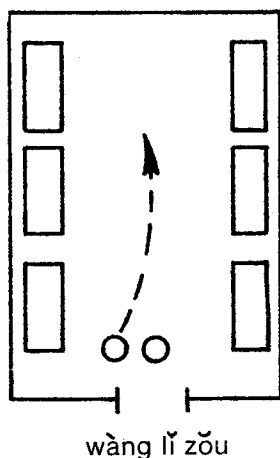
Shàng lóu means, literally, "ascend to an upper story," that is, "go/come upstairs."

7. A: Xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dīfang? Where is the washroom?  
 E: Zài nàli. Wàng lǐ zǒu, zài yòubian. It's over there. Go all the way in, and it's on the right.

Notes on No. 7

Literally, xǐshǒujiān means a "wash-hands room," which sometimes contains only a sink. In a house, the xǐzǎojiān, meaning literally "take-a-bath room," may contain only a bathtub. The politest way to ask about a bathroom is to use xǐshǒujiān. However, this Westernized way of asking may not be understood everywhere in China. To be sure you are directed to a room with a toilet, use the more specific word cèsuǒ, "toilet," "rest room": Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài nàli? "May I ask, where is the toilet?"

Wàng lǐ means, literally, "towards the inside." In English, you say "go to the back," whatever the shape of the room. In Chinese, you say wàng lǐ zǒu for a narrow one-corridor room and wàng hòu zǒu for a wide room.



8. qián	front, ahead
9. duìmiàn (duìmiàn r)	the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
10. zhèbian (zhèbian r)	this way, this side
11. nàbian (nèibian r)	that way, that side
12. lóutī	staircase, stairway, stairs
13. zǒuláng	corridor
14. cèsuǒ	toilet, rest room
15. jìn	to enter
16. -tou	end (occurs in place words)
17. -mian(r)	surface (occurs in place words)

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Duìmiàn is a place word. It is a noun. Like other nouns, duìmiàn can be modified by a de phrase. For example:

Diànyǐngyuàn zài gōngyuán de duìmiàn.	The theater is across from the park. (literally, "The theater is at the park's facing side.")
--	---

Zǒuláng: Originally, this word referred to an open, roofed corridor along the side of a building. It now refers also to hallways inside a building.

Guòle zhège zǒuláng jiù shì cāntīng.	When you have passed through this corridor, that's the dining room.
---	--

The verb jìn, "to enter," functions in a sentence much like the verb chū, "to exit."

Jìnle zhège dāmén, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shì cāntīng.	When you have entered the main door, go to the right, and that's the dining room.
--	---

Like the verb chū, jìn must be followed either by a word naming the place entered or by a directional ending such as qu or lai.

Nǐ jìnqu, wàng zuǒ zǒu, jiù shì mài bào de.	Go in and go to the left. That's where they sell newspapers.
--	---

(An exception is the phrase Qǐng jìn, "Please come in," which does not need the ending -lai.)

The syllable -tou, "end," may be added to a direction word such as hòu, "back," to change it into a place word, hòutou, "back." One-syllable direction words like lǐ and hòu may be used after wàng, "towards." In most other situations, you must use a place word made up of the direction word and an ending such as -bian(r), -tou, or -mian(r).

The syllable -tou does not combine with as many direction words as -bian(r) and -mian(r) do. For instance, -tou does not combine with "left" and "right." (See the chart below.) Forms ending in -tou are especially common in Běijīng.

The syllable -mian(r), "surface," may also be added to a direction word to make a place word. Notice that while this syllable combines with more forms than -tou does, -mian(r) is not as common as -bian(r).

## DIRECTION NAMES

## PLACE NAMES

dōng	dōngbian(r)		
nán	nánbian(r)		
xī	xībian(r)		
běi	běibian(r)		
lǐ	lǐbian(r)	lǐtou	lǐmian(r)
wài	wàibian(r)	wàitou	wàimian(r)
qián	qiánbian(r)	qiántou	qiánmian(r)
hòu	hòubian(r)	hòutou	hòumian(r)
zuǒ	zuǒbian(r)		zuǒmian(r)
yòu	yòubian(r)		yòumian(r)
shàng	shàngbian(r)	shàngtou	shàngmian(r)
xià	xiàbian(r)	xiàtou	xiàmian(r)
	pángbiān(r)		

## VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Buildings and Institutions

apartment building	gōngyùlóu
auditorium	dàlǐtáng
bank	yínháng
bar	jiǔbā
bus station	chángtúqìchēzhàn
cafeteria	zìzhùcāntīng
castle	chéngbǎo
church	jiàotáng
company	gōngsī
court	fǎyuàn
dormitory	sùshè
exhibit hall	zhǎnlǎnguǎn
factory	chǎngfáng [ <u>the building</u> ]; gōngchǎng [ <u>the thing</u> ]
farm	nóngchǎng
fire department	xiāofángduì
gas station	jiāyóuzhàn, qìyóuzhàn
gymnasium	tīyùguǎn
hospital	yīyuàn
hotel	lǚguǎn, lǚshè, fàndiàn [ <u>a large, modern hotel with a restaurant; also means "restaurant"</u> ]
library	túshūguǎn
market	shìchǎng
memorial hall	jìniàntáng
mosque	qīngzhēnsī
motel	qìchē lǚguǎn
movie theater	diànyǐngyuàn
museum	bówùguǎn
observatory	tiānwéntái
office building	bàngōnglóu
organization	jīgǔān
pagoda	bǎotǎ
palace	gōngdiàn
parking lot	tíngchēchǎng
pavilion	tíngzi



police station	jǐngchájú [Taiwan]; gōngānjú [PRC]
post office	yóujú, yóuzhèngjú
prison	jiānyù
railroad station	huǒchēzhàn
ranch	mùchǎng
residence	zhùzhái
restaurant	fànguǎnzi, fànguǎnr, fàndiàn
school	xuéxiào
shop	shāngdiàn
single-story house	píngfáng
skyscraper	mótiān dàshà (mótiān dàxià)
stadium	tǐyùchǎng
supermarket	chāojíshìchǎng
television station	diànshìtái
temple	miào
theater	jùchǎng; xìyuàn [old word]
villa	biéshù

And some Chinese terms that do not have simple English translations:

huāyuán yángfáng	Western-style house with garden
shēnzhái dāyuàn	compound of connecting courtyards, each courtyard surrounded by living quarters
sìhéyuàn	compound with houses around a courtyard

## DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?<br>(cue) mài shūde<br>(May I ask, on what floor is the toilet?) | <u>You</u> : Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu?<br>(May I ask, on what floor are books sold?) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu?<br>mài píjiǔde   | Qǐngwèn, mài píjiǔde zài jǐlóu?  |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, mài píjiǔde zài jǐlóu?<br>mài tángde  | Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu?   |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu?<br>xiǎomàibù  | Qǐngwèn, xiǎomàibù zài jǐlóu?  |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, xiǎomàibù zài jǐlóu?<br>cèsuǒ   | Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?  |
| 6. Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?<br>mài huāpíngde   | Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài jǐlóu?  |

B. Transformation Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài jǐlóu?<br>(cue) èr<br>(May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?) | <u>You</u> : Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài èrlóu, duì bu duì?<br>(May I ask, the dining room is on the second floor. Is that correct?) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?<br>sān   | Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài sānlóu, duì bu duì?  |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu?<br>wǔ   | Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài wǔlóu, duì bu duì?  |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu?<br>sì  | Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài sìlóu, duì bu duì?   |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài jǐlóu?<br>liù   | Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài liùlóu, duì bu duì?  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. Qǐngwèn, mài yūsǎnde zài jǐlóu?<br>sān | Qǐngwèn, mài yūsǎnde zài sānlóu,<br>duì bu duì? |
| 7. Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài jǐlóu?<br>èr | Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài èrlóu,<br>duì bu duì? |

C. Expansion Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ yào mǎi shū.<br>(cue) shūdiàn<br>(I want to buy a book.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ yào mǎi shū. Qǐngwèn, zhèr<br>fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shūdiàn?<br>(I want to buy a book. May I<br>ask, is there a bookstore<br>around here?) |
| 2. Wǒ yào mǎi táng.      mài tángde   | Wǒ yào mǎi táng. Qǐngwèn, zhèr<br>fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mài tángde?  |
| 3. Wǒ yào mǎi dìtú.      shūdiàn  | Wǒ yào mǎi dìtú. Qǐngwèn, zhèr<br>fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shūdiàn?   |
| 4. Wǒ yào huàn qián.      yínháng   | Wǒ yào huàn qián. Qǐngwèn, zhèr<br>fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?  |
| 5. Wǒ yào kàn diànyǐng.<br>diànyǐngyuàn   | Wǒ yào kàn diànyǐng. Qǐngwèn, zhèr<br>fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu diànyǐngyuàn?  |
| 6. Wǒ yào mǎi bào.      mài bàode   | Wǒ yào mǎi bào. Qǐngwèn, zhèr<br>fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mài bàode?  |
| 7. Wǒ yào mǎi féizào.      shāngdiàn  | Wǒ yào mǎi féizào. Qǐngwèn, zhèr<br>fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shāngdiàn?   |

D. Transformation Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Jǐlóu mài dìtú?<br>(cue) èrlóu<br>(On what floor are maps<br>sold?) | <u>You</u> : Èrlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài dìtúde?<br>(On the second floor is there<br>a place where maps are sold?) |
| 2. Jǐlóu mài huāpíng?      sānlóu   | Sānlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài huāpíngde?  |
| 3. Jǐlóu mài táng?      wǔlóu   | Wǔlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài tángde?  |
| 4. Jǐlóu mài pánziwǎn?      sānlóu  | Sānlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài pánziwǎnde?   |

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5. Jǐlóu mài féizào? sīlóu | Sīlóu yǒu meiyou mài féizào de? |
| 6. Jǐlóu mài zázhi? liùlóu | Liùlóu yǒu meiyou mài zázhi de? |
| 7. Jǐlóu mài yǔsǎn? wǔlóu  | Wǔlóu yǒu meiyou mài yǔsǎn de?  |

E. Expansion Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nín zuò diàntī dào èrlóu.<br>èrlóu.<br>(cue) nèibian<br>(Take the elevator to the second floor.) | <u>You</u> : Òu, zuò diàntī dào èrlóu, xiàle diàntī, wàng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì?<br>(Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?) |
| 2. Nín zuò diàntī dào sīlóu.<br>yǒu  | Òu, zuò diàntī dào sīlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng yǒu zǒu, duì bu duì?   |
| 3. Nín zuò diàntī dào wǔlóu.<br>zuǒ  | Òu, zuò diàntī dào wǔlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?   |
| 4. Nín zuò diàntī dào liùlóu.<br>yìzhí   | Òu, zuò diàntī dào liùlóu, xiàle diàntī yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?   |
| 5. Nín zuò diàntī dào sānlóu.<br>wàng yǒu yìzhí  | Òu, zuò diàntī dào sānlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng yǒu yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  |
| 6. Nín zuò diàntī dào qīlóu.<br>nèibian  | Òu, zuò diàntī dào qīlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì?   |
| 7. Nín zuò diàntī dào èrlóu.<br>zuǒbian  | Òu, zuò diàntī dào èrlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒbian zǒu, duì bu duì?   |

F. Expansion Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu yǒu zǒu.<br>(cue) xià lóu<br>(First, I go from here to the right.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?<br>(First, I go from here to the right. Then I go downstairs, and I'll see it. Right?) |
| 2. Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. shàng lóu  | Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 3. Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu zǒu. xià lóu  | Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 4. Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng nàbian zǒu. shàng lóu   | Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng nàbian zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?  |
| 5. Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. xià lóu  | Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 6. Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu. shàng lóu  | Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 7. Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu. xià lóu  | Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |

G. Transformation Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Xiàle diàntī wàng yòu zǒu jiù shì mài dìtúde.<br>(The map department is [just] to the right when you get off the elevator.) | <u>You</u> : Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nàbian zǒu jiù shì mài dìtúde?<br>(Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the map department?) |
| 2. Xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ zǒu jiù shì mài shūde.   | Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nàbian zǒu jiù shì mài shūde?   |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 3. Xiàle diàntī wàng hòu zǒu jiù shì mài huāpíngde.           | Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài huāpíngde?  |
| 4. Xiàle diàntī wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài yūsǎnde.       | Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài yūsǎnde?    |
| 5. Xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài tángde.        | Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài tángde?     |
| 6. Xiàle diàntī wàng nàbian yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài pánziwǎnde. | Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài pánziwǎnde? |
| 7. Xiàle diàntī wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài zìdiǎnde.      | Duìbuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài zìdiǎnde?   |

H. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.<br>(Go straight to the back, up the stairs, and it's on the left.) | <u>You</u> : Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu wàng zuǒ zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?<br>(Okay, I go directly to the back, upstairs and to the left, and I'll see it. Right?) |
| 2. Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì.   | Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 3. Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.   | Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, wàng zuǒbian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 4. Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, yòubian jiù shì.   | Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, wàng yòubian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 5. Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, duìmiàn jiù shì.   | Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yìzhí zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?  |
| 6. Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì.   | Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, wàng yòubian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?   |
| 7. Nǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, duìmiàn jiù shì.   | Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu, xià lóu, yìzhí zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?  |

I. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang?<br>dìfang?<br>(cue) cèsuǒ<br>(Where is the washroom?) | <u>You</u> : Cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang?<br>(Where is the toilet?) |
| 2. Cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang?<br>lótī   | Lótī zài shénme dìfang?   |
| 3. Lótī zài shénme dìfang?<br>diàntī  | Diàntī zài shénme dìfang?                                       |
| 4. Diàntī zài shénme dìfang?<br>mài bàode   | Mài bàode zài shénme dìfang?                                    |
| 5. Mài bàode zài shénme dìfang?<br>mài yūsānde  | Mài yūsānde zài shénme dìfang?                                  |
| 6. Mài yūsānde zài shénme dìfang?<br>cāntīng  | Cāntīng zài shénme dìfang?                                      |

J. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐngwèn, xǐshǒujiān<br>zài shénme dìfang?<br>(cue) lóutī pángbiān<br>(May I ask, where is the<br>washroom?) | <u>You</u> : Zài nàli, zài lóutī pángbiān.<br>(It's there, beside the<br>staircase.) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài shénme<br>dìfang?      lótī yòubian   | Zài nàli, zài lóutī yòubian.   |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, lóutī zài shénme<br>dìfang?      hòubian  | Zài nàli, zài hòubian.   |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài shénme<br>dìfang?      zuǒbian  | Zài nàli, zài zuǒbian.   |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài<br>shénme dìfang?<br>diàntī pángbiān  | Zài nàli, zài diàntī pángbiān.   |

6. Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài shénme dìfang?  
lótī pángbiān                      Zài nàli, zài lóutī pángbiān.
7. Qǐngwèn, mài pánziwǎnde zài shénme dìfang?  
lótī zuǒbian                        Zài nàli, zài lóutī zuǒbian.



View of downtown Shànghǎi from the top of the Overseas Chinese Hotel,  
across the street from People's Park



## UNIT 5

## REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A: Duìbuqǐ.   | Excuse me.  |
| B: Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?  | What can I do for you?  |
| 2. A: Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?                       | May I ask, what road is this?   |
| B: Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù.                                       | This is Nánjīng West Road.  |
| 3. B: Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?                                   | What place are you looking for?   |
| A: Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wúshìsìxiàng.                | I am looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.                 |
| 4. C: Wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù.                                 | I am looking for Zhōngshān North Road.                                    |
| 5. B: Nǐ zǒucuò le. Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù.                      | You went the wrong way. This is Nánjīng West Road.                        |
| B: Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.   | You go that way.  |
| B: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.             | Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.             |
| 6. * A: Ōu, wǒ zǒucuò le.                                      | Oh, I went the wrong way.   |
| A: Nǐ shuō wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu.                                 | You say I should go that way.   |
| A: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, shì bu shì? | Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1. Is that it? |
| B: Shì.  | Yes.  |
| 7. B: Dào le Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba.             | After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.              |
| A: Hǎo. Xièxie.  | All right. Thanks.  |
| 8. A: Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài nǎlǐ?                                | May I ask, where is Alley 5?  |
| D: Nǐ zài wàng qián zǒu yídiǎn.                                | You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.                               |
| D: Yòubian dìyíge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng.                        | The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.                           |

9. \* A: Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.  
Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì  
bu shì? I go ahead a little bit farther;  
Alley 5 is on the right side.  
Is that it?
- D: Shì. Yòubian dìyige lùkǒu  
jiù shì. Yes. It's the first intersection on  
the right.

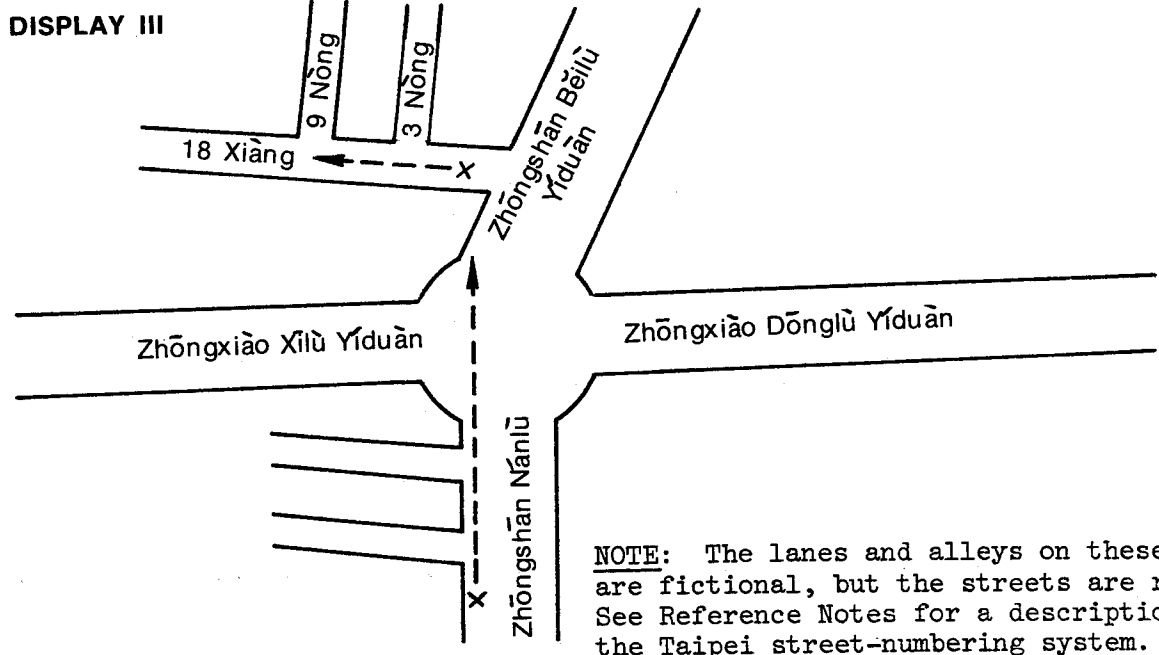
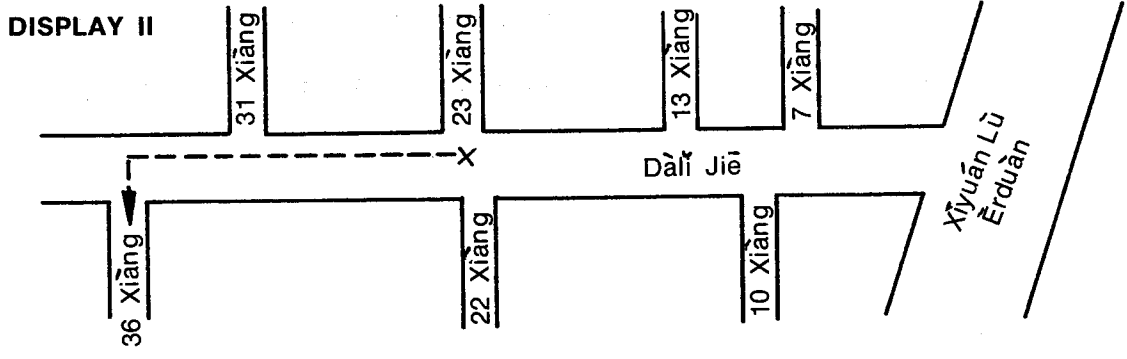
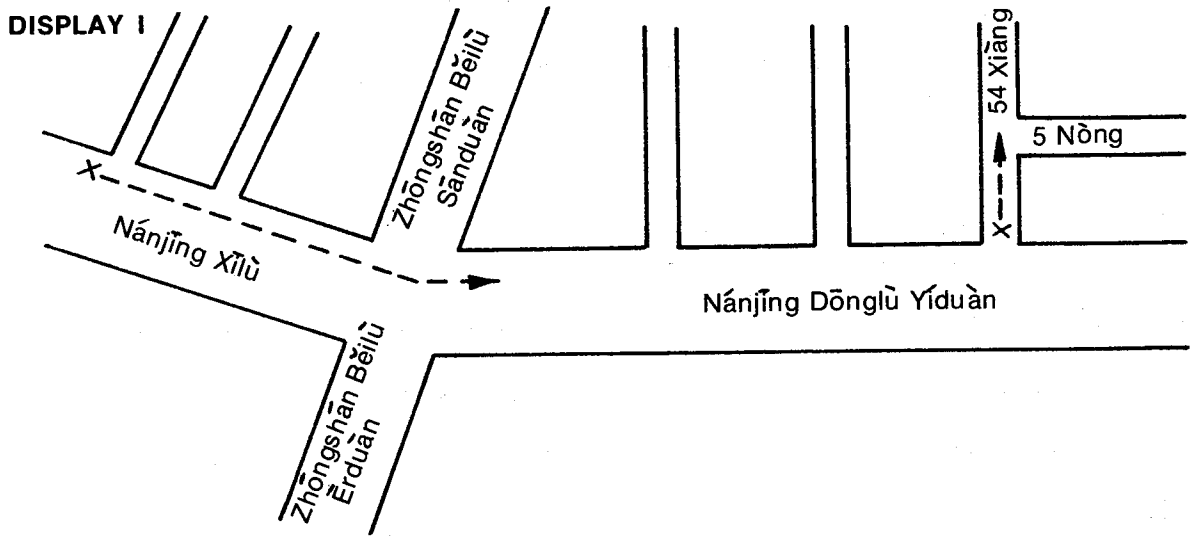
ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 10. hútong (hútōngr)   | a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng) |
| 11. mén (ménr)         | gate, door                        |
| 12. ménkǒu (ménkǒur)   | doorway, gateway, entrance        |
| 13. qiáo               | bridge                            |
| 14. tiānqiáo           | pedestrian overpass               |
| 15. dìxià xínggrén dào | pedestrian underground walkway    |

---

\*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

MAPS FOR C-1 TAPE



**NOTE:** The lanes and alleys on these maps are fictional, but the streets are real. See Reference Notes for a description of the Taipei street-numbering system.

## VOCABULARY

biéren	another person, someone else
cuò	to make a mistake, to be wrong
dàmén(r)	gate
-dào	route, path
dìxià	underground
dìxià xíng rén dào	pedestrian underground walkway
-duàn	section, block
guò	to cross, to pass
hútong (hútòng)	a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng)
lòng	alley
mén(r)	gate, door
ménkǒu(r)	doorway, gateway, entrance
nǎ-	which?
nǎge	which?
Nánjīng Dōnglù	Nánjīng East Road
Nánjīng Xīlù	Nánjīng West Road
nòng	alley (Taiwan)
qiáo	bridge
shì	matter, affair, business
tiānqiáo	pedestrian overpass
-tiáo	(counter for long, winding things)
wèn	to ask
xiàng	lane
xíng rén	pedestrian
zhǎo	to look for
Zhōngshān Běilù	Zhōngshān North Road
zǒucuò le	to have gone the wrong way

(introduced on C-2 tape)

bān jiā	to move one's residence
dàgài	probably
huí	the opposite direction
zǒuguò le	to have walked past

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Duìbuqǐ. Excuse me.  
 B: Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a? What can I do for you?

Notes on No. 1

Shì: This noun has a very abstract meaning that does not translate easily into English. Some of its commoner translations are "matter," "business," "affair," and "thing." You have learned that dōngxī can also mean "thing." Dōngxī is used to refer to tangible things, while shì refers to abstract matters.

When used to answer someone who is asking for help, the question Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a? is an offer of help.

Nǐ	yǒu	shénme	shì a?
(You	have	what	problem?)

"What's your problem?" i.e.,  
 "What can I do for you?"

The same question (without the softening a) might be rather rude if it is directed to a person who is wandering around an office building.

Nǐ	yǒu	shénme	shì?
(You	have	what	business?)

"What business do you have (here)?"  
 i.e., "What are you doing here?"

2. A: Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù? May I ask, what road is this?  
 B: Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù. This is Nánjīng West Road.

Notes on No. 2

Zhè- is the way zhèi-, "this," is pronounced outside of Běijīng. From this point on in these course materials, the forms zhè-, "this," nà-, "that," and nǎ-, "which," will be used for all non-Běijīng speakers.\* In a conversation, you should use these forms if another person uses them.

-tiáo is a counter for long, twisting things, such as roads, rivers, fish, and dragons.

In English you say "What road is this?" In Chinese you say "What road is this road?" Zhèitiáo lù shì shénme lù? You may not leave out the last word, lù.

Nánjīng Xīlù: In Guǎngzhōu, Shànghǎi, Taipei, and many other cities, the street direction is given after the street name.

Nánjīng Xīlù

Nánjīng West Road

In Běijīng, the street direction is given before the street name.

Xī Chángān Jiē

West Chángān Street

3. B: Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?  
A: Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù  
Yíduàn, Wúshìsìxiàng.

What place are you looking for?  
I'm looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng  
East Road, Section 1.

Notes on No. 3

Zhǎo, "to look for," "to try to find"

Nǐ zhǎo shéi?

Who are you looking for?

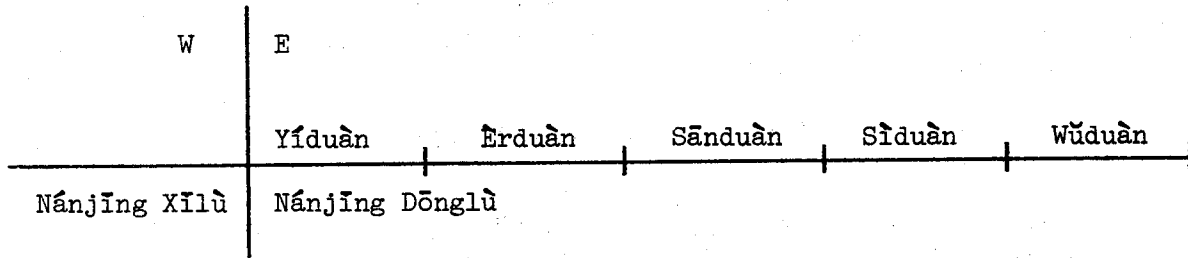
Tā shì bu shì zhǎo gōngzuò?

Is he looking for work?

---

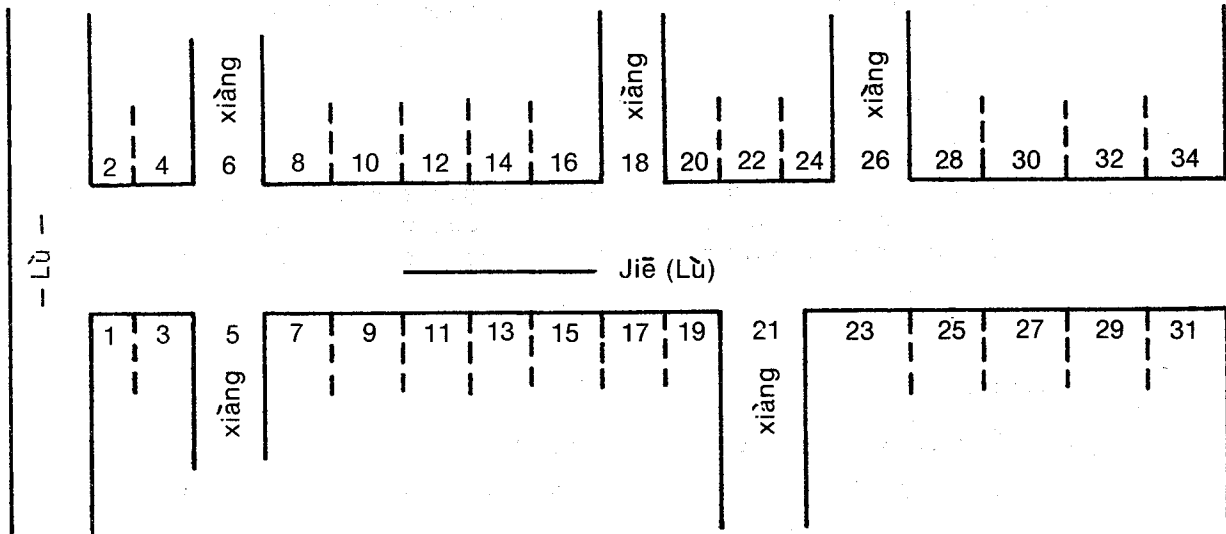
\* Actually, Běijīng speakers do use zhè-, nà-, and nǎ- in certain contexts, especially when reading aloud. But in ordinary conversation they mostly use zhèi-, nèi-, and něi-.

Yíduàn: Streets that are divided into North and South or East and West in Taipei may also be divided into sections.



The sections of a street, like the floors of a building, are numbered yī, èr, sān, and so on, and do not need the prefix dì-.

Xiàng: Lanes in Taipei are numbered as if they were houses. You can find your way to a certain lane by observing the numbers of the houses on the same side of the street. Even numbers are on one side, and odd numbers are on the other.



Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wǔshìxìxiàng, "Nánjīng East Road, Section 1, Lane 54": In giving a Chinese address, you go from larger to smaller areas, mentioning the lane after the road. In English, however, the address begins with the smaller area: "Lane 54, Nánjīng East Road, Section 1."

4. C: Wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù. I am looking for Zhōngshān North Road.
5. B: Nǐ zǒucuò le. Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù. You went the wrong way. This is Nánjīng West Road.  
B: Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu. You go that way.  
B: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn. Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

Notes on No. 5

Zǒucuò le is a compound verb of result. Zǒucuò le is literally zǒu, "to walk," and cuò, "to be wrong/mistaken/erroneous": "to have walked with the result of being wrong."

The marker le is used in "I'm wrong," Wǒ cuò le. Notice that the marker is also used for the compound verb zǒucuò le.

The syllable -cuò may be used with other action verbs to indicate a result. For instance, there is

shuōcuò le	to have said incorrectly
tīngcuò le	to have heard incorrectly
xiěcuò le	to have written incorrectly
niāncuò le	to have read (something aloud) incorrectly
Òu, wǒ mǎicùò le! Zhège tài xiǎo le!	Oh, I've bought the wrong thing! This is too small!
Nǐ kàncuò le. Yínháng cóng jiǔdiǎn zhōng jiù kāi mén le.	You read it wrong. The bank has been open since 9 a.m.
Nǐ kàncuò le zhōng, xiànzài yǐjīng bādiǎn bàn le.	You read the clock wrong. It's already 8:30.

Guò, "to cross," "to pass": This word can refer to time as well as to space.

Guòle zhèige lùkǒu, zài wàng qián zǒu bù yuǎn, jiù dào nèige xuéxiào le.	After you have crossed this intersection, then go a little farther ahead, and you'll be at the school.
--	--



- A: Míngtiān wǒ qǐng nǐ kàn diányǐng, hǎo bu hǎo? How about my treating you to a movie tomorrow?  
B: Zhèi liǎngtiān dōu yǒu kè, guò liǎngtiān zài shuō ba. I have classes the next couple of days; let's see about it in a couple of days.  
Wǒ xiǎng, guòle jǐge xīngqī, nǐde bìng jiù kéyǐ hǎo le. I think that after a few weeks have passed your illness will be all better.

6. A: Òu, wǒ zǒucuò le. Oh, I went the wrong way.  
A: Nǐ shuō wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu. You say I should go that way.  
A: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, shì bu shì? Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1. Is that it?  
B: Shì. Yes.

Notes on No. 6

Nǐ shuō: In exchange 6, shuō means "to say that." You have already learned another meaning: "to speak (a language)." (The "should" in the translation of the second sentence captures the meaning of the Chinese directions, which are stronger than a statement but weaker than a command.)

Guò sāntiáo jiē, "cross three streets": In English you would probably say "go three blocks," but in Chinese directions are usually given in terms of streets. The word lùkǒu, "intersection," is also used: guò jǐge lùkǒu, "go a few blocks."

7. B: Dào le Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba. After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.  
A: Hǎo. Xièxie. All right. Thanks.

Note on No. 7

Zài, "and then": In exchange 7, the adverb zài is used for the second action in a sequence. It is not easily translated into English.

8. A: Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài nǎli? May I ask, where is Alley 5?  
D: Nǐ zài wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.  
D: Yòubian dìyige lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng. The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.

Notes on No. 8

Nòng, "alley," has an alternate pronunciation: lòng.

In order of increasing size, streets in Taipei are named nòng, "alley," xiàng, "lane," jiē, "street," and lù, "road." In Běijīng, a large street is called jiē, "street," or dàjiē, "boulevard," and a small street is called hútong, "alley." Unlike alleys in Taipei, alleys in Běijīng usually have names rather than numbers.

Nǐ zài wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn: Here, zài has a new meaning: "more/again/farther/in addition." The combination of the adverb zài before the verb and yìdiǎn after the verb means "a little more," "a little farther." Here are some other examples:

Nǐ zài chī yìdiǎnr ba!	Have some more! (Eat some more!)
Nǐ zài zuò yìhuǐr ba!	Sit a while longer, why don't you? [invitation to a guest to stay longer]
Zài gěi wǒ yìge ba.	Give me another one (one more).
Zài gěi wǒ liǎngge ba.	Give me two more.

Qián by itself may be used only in certain special phrases. One of these is wǎng qián... (followed by a verb like zǒu). The term qiánbian (qiánbianr) means "directly in front of." \* To say "in front of the door" or "up front," you must use a place word (qiánbian, qiántou, qiánmian).

---

\* The word for "across from" or "opposite" is duìmiàn (duìmiànr).

There are several single-syllable direction words like qián which you may use after wàng. In most other contexts, though, a longer form, a place word, must be used.

wàng	}	qián hòu shàng xià zuǒ yòu lǐ wài dōng nán xī běi	}	zǒu	<u>BUT</u>	zài	}	qiánbian (qiántou, qiánmian) hòubian (hòutou, hòumian) shàngbian (shàngtou, shàngmian) xiàbian (xiàtou, xiàmian) zuǒbian (zuǒmian) yòubian (yòumian) lǐbian (lǐtou, lǐmian) wàibian (wàitou, wàimian) dōngbian nánbian xībian běibian
------	---	--	---	-----	------------	-----	---	--

9. A: Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.      I go ahead a little bit farther;  
       Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì            Alley 5 is on the right side.  
       bu shì?                                    Is that it?  
 D: Shì. Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu            Yes. It's the first intersection  
       jiù shì.                                    on the right.

- |                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 10. hùtong (hútongr)   | a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng) |
| 11. mén (ménr)         | gate, door                        |
| 12. ménkǒu (mènkǒur)   | doorway, gateway, entrance        |
| 13. qiáo               | bridge                            |
| 14. tiānqiáo           | pedestrian overpass               |
| 15. dìxià xíng rén dào | pedestrian underground walkway    |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Mén: In addition to meaning "door," this word also means "gate." The word dāmén may also be used to refer to a main gate, as well as a main door.

Tiānqiáo literally means "sky bridge."

Guòle zhèige tiānqiáo, jiù shì Dìyī Gōngsī.	When you have crossed this pedestrian overpass, that's the First Company.
---	---

Dìxià xíng rén dào literally means "underground pedestrian route."

Chūle zhège dìxià xíng rén  
dào, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù  
shì mài bào de.

When you have come out of this pedestrian underground walkway, go to the right, and that's where they sell newspapers.



Elementary school children in Taipei

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker:</u> Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù<br>shì shénme lù?<br>(cue) Nánjīng Dōnglù<br>(May I ask, what road<br>is this?) | <u>You:</u> Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Nánjīng<br>Dōnglù ma?<br>(May I ask, is this Nánjīng<br>East Road?) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme<br>lù? Zhōngshān Běilù   | Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Zhōngshān<br>Běilù ma?  |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme<br>lù? Xīnshēng Nánlù  | Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Xīnshēng<br>Nánlù ma?   |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme<br>lù? Nánjīng Xīlù  | Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Nánjīng<br>Xīlù ma?   |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme<br>lù? Xīnshēng Běilù  | Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Xīnshēng<br>Běilù ma?   |
| 6. Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme<br>lù? Zhōnghuá Lù   | Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Zhōnghuá<br>Lù ma?  |
| 7. Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme<br>lù? Shànghǎi Lù   | Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Shànghǎi<br>Lù ma?  |

B. Transformation Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker:</u> Zhè shì Nánjīng Dōnglù<br>Yíduàn.<br>(This is Nánjīng East<br>Road, Section 1.) | <u>You:</u> Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Nánjīng Dōnglù<br>jǐduàn?<br>(Excuse me, what section of<br>Nánjīng East Road is this?) |
| 2. Zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn.   | Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù<br>jǐduàn?  |
| 3. Zhè shì Xīnshēng Nánlù Yíduàn.  | Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Xīnshēng Nánlù<br>jǐduàn?   |
| 4. Zhè shì Rénài Lù Sānduàn.   | Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Rénài Lù jǐduàn?  |

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 5. Zhè shì Hángzhōu Nánlù Yíduàn. | Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Hángzhōu Nánlù jǐduàn? |
| 6. Zhè shì Héping Xīlù Èrduàn.    | Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Héping Xīlù jǐduàn?    |
| 7. Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù Yíduàn.   | Duìbuqǐ, zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù jǐduàn?   |

C. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ zhāo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn ma?<br>(cue) 5<br>(Are you looking for Nánjīng East Road, Section 1?) | <u>You</u> : Shì, wǒ zhāo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn Wǔxiàng.<br>(Yes, I'm looking for Lane 5 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.) |
| 2. Nǐ zhāo Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn ma? 18  | Shì, wǒ zhāo Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn Shíbáxiàng.  |
| 3. Nǐ zhāo Héping Xīlù Yíduàn ma? 6   | Shì, wǒ zhāo Héping Xīlù Yíduàn Liùxiàng.  |
| 4. Nǐ zhāo Xīnshēng Nánlù Sānduàn ma? 4   | Shì, wǒ zhāo Xīnshēng Nánlù Sānduàn Sìxiàng.   |
| 5. Nǐ zhāo Zhōngshān Nánlù Èrduàn ma? 14  | Shì, wǒ zhāo Zhōngshān Nánlù Èrduàn Shísixiàng.  |
| 6. Nǐ zhāo Rénài Lù Sānduàn ma? 9   | Shì, wǒ zhāo Rénài Lù Sānduàn Jiǔxiàng.  |
| 7. Nǐ zhāo Zìyóu Lù Yíduàn ma? 11   | Shì, wǒ zhāo Zìyóu Lù Yíduàn Shíyīxiàng.   |

D. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.  
(cue) sān  
(Go that way.)

You: Hǎo, wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu, guò sāntiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?  
(Okay, I go that way, and after crossing three streets that's it. Is that correct?)

2. Nǐ wàng yòu zǒu. liǎng

Hǎo, wǒ wàng yòu zǒu, guò liǎngtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

3. Nǐ wàng dōng zǒu. sì

Hǎo, wǒ wàng dōng zǒu, guò sìtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

4. Nǐ wàng xī zǒu. yī

Hǎo, wǒ wàng xī zǒu, guò yītiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

5. Nǐ wàng nán zǒu. wǔ

Hǎo, wǒ wàng nán zǒu, guò wǔtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

6. Nǐ wàng běi zǒu. liǎng

Hǎo, wǒ wàng běi zǒu, guò liǎngtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

7. Nǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu. sì

Hǎo, wǒ wàng zuǒ zǒu, guò sìtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

E. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.  
Wǔnòng zài yòubian.  
(Go ahead a bit, and Alley 5 is on the right.)

You: Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.  
Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?  
(I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 5 is on the right. Is that it?)

2. Wǎng nàbian zǒu yìdiǎn.  
Liùnòng zài zuǒbian.

Wǒ zài wǎng nàbian zǒu yìdiǎn.  
Liùnòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì?

3. Wǎng dōng zǒu yìdiǎn. Sānnòng zài yòubian.

Wǒ zài wǎng dōng zǒu yìdiǎn.  
Sānnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?

4. Wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Shínnòng zài yòubian.

Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn.  
Shínnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?

- |    |   |  |
|----|---|--|
| 5. | Wàng xī zǒu yìdiǎn. Shíèrnòng zài zuǒbian.  | Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yìdiǎn. Shíèrnòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì?  |
| 6. | Wàng nán zǒu yìdiǎn. Shíqínòng zài zuǒbian. | Wǒ zài wàng nán zǒu yìdiǎn. Shíqínòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì? |
| 7. | Wàng běi zǒu yìdiǎn. Bǎnòng zài zuǒbian.    | Wǒ zài wàng běi zǒu yìdiǎn. Bǎnòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì?    |

F. Transformation Drill

- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì? (cue) dìyíge (I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 5 is on the right. Is that correct?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Yòubian dìyíge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng, duì bu duì? (I go a bit farther ahead, and the first intersection on the right is Alley 5. Is that correct?) |
| 2. | Wǒ zài wàng zuǒ zǒu yìdiǎn. Sǎnnòng zài zuǒbian, duì bu duì? dìsìge  | Wǒ zài wàng zuǒ zǒu yìdiǎn. Zuǒbian dìsìge lùkǒu jiù shì Sǎnnòng, duì bu duì?   |
| 3. | Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Liùnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì? dìèrge   | Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Yòubian dìèrge lùkǒu jiù shì Liùnòng, duì bu duì?  |
| 4. | Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yìdiǎn. Sǎnnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì? dìsānge  | Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yìdiǎn. Yòubian dìsānge lùkǒu jiù shì Sǎnnòng, duì bu duì?   |
| 5. | Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yìdiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì? dìyíge  | Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yìdiǎn. Yòubian dìyíge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng, duì bu duì?   |
| 6. | Wǒ zài wàng dōng zǒu yìdiǎn. Qínòng zài zuǒbian, duì bu duì? dìsìge  | Wǒ zài wàng dōng zǒu yìdiǎn. Zuǒbian dìsìge lùkǒu jiù shì Qínòng, duì bu duì?   |
| 7. | Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Liùnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì? dìwǔge   | Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Yòubian dìwǔge lùkǒu jiù shì Liùnòng, duì bu duì?  |



G. Transformation Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā cóngqián zhù zai<br>nèige hútong.<br>(cue) nián<br>(He used to live on<br>that alley.) | <u>You</u> : Tā cóngqián zài nèige hútong<br>zhùle jǐnián?<br>(How many years did he live on<br>that alley?) |
| 2. Wǒ fùqin cóngqián zhù zai<br>Guānghuá Lù. nián   | Nǐ fùqin cóngqián zài Guānghuá Lù<br>zhùle jǐnián?   |
| 3. Tā gēge shàngge yuè zhù zai<br>nèige fàndiàn. tiān   | Tā gēge shàngge yuè zài nèige fàndiàn<br>zhùle jǐtiān?   |
| 4. Tā jiějie qùnián zhù zài péngyou<br>jiā. yuè   | Tā jiějie qùnián zài péngyou jiā<br>zhùle jǐge yuè?  |
| 5. Wáng Tóngzhì cóngqián zhù zai<br>zhèige hútong. nián   | Wáng Tóngzhì cóngqián zài zhèige<br>hútong zhùle jǐnián?   |
| 6. Zhāng Tóngzhì qùnián zhù zai<br>nèige hútong. yuè  | Zhāng Tóngzhì qùnián zài nèige<br>hútong zhùle jǐge yuè?   |
| 7. Tāmen cóngqián zhù zai Sānlitún.<br>nián   | Tāmen cóngqián zài Sānlitún zhùle<br>jǐnián?   |

H. Response Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?<br>(cue) Nánjīng Lù<br>(What place are you<br>looking for?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Lù.<br>(I'm looking for Nánjīng Road.) |
| 2. Nǐ zhǎo shénme lù?<br>Zhōngshān Lù  | Wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Lù.   |
| 3. Nǐ zhǎo shénme? nèiběn shū  | Wǒ zhǎo nèiběn shū.   |
| 4. Nǐ zhǎo shéi? Wáng Xiānsheng  | Wǒ zhǎo Wáng Xiānsheng.   |
| 5. Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?<br>Wǔguānchù   | Wǒ zhǎo Wǔguānchù.  |
| 6. Nǐ zhǎo shéi? Hú Měilíng  | Wǒ zhǎo Hú Měilíng.   |
| 7. Nǐ zhǎo shénme? yìzhāng<br>Táiběi dìtú  | Wǒ zhǎo yìzhāng Táiběi dì   |





